

OLD FRENCH SERIES • VOLUME 18

ROBERT DE CLARI

ROBERT DE CLARI

La Conquête de Constantinople

The Conquest of Constantinople

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

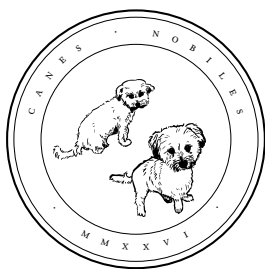


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 18 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Philippe Lauer's text,
La Conquête de Constantinople (Paris, 1924), with his errata

Set from page scans of that printing

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps Lauer's spelling and his accents. The margin gives
his chapter numbers in Arabic figures; his chapters are grouped
into the reading sections, whose English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Preaching and the Crusaders	7
II · Boniface Takes the Cross	13
III · The Treaty with Venice	17
IV · The Muster at Venice	21
V · The Host at Venice Cannot Pay	23
VI · Zara	29
VII · The Young Alexius and the Emperor Manuel	36
VIII · The Fall of Andronicus	49
IX · Alexius the Usurper	61
X · The Envoys and the Young Alexius	63
XI · Conrad of Montferrat	67
XII · Into the Straits	82

XIII · The Tower of Galata	86
XIV · The Emperor Comes Out	93
XV · The Armies Face to Face	101
XVI · Kyrsac Restored	106
XVII · The Coronation of Alexius	114
XVIII · The Fireships	119
XIX · Murzuphlus	124
XX · Philea and the Icon	131
XXI · The Pact and the First Assault	137
XXII · The Second Assault	142
XXIII · Peter of Amiens and Aleaume of Clari	149
XXIV · The City Taken	154
XXV · The Booty	160
XXVI · The Wonders of Constantinople	163
XXVII · The Gates, the Hippodrome, and the Columns	173
XXVIII · The Election of Baldwin	180
XXIX · The Treasure Shared	189
XXX · Boniface Rebels	194
XXXI · The Fiefs, and the Death of Murzuphlus	202
XXXII · Adrianople	207
XXXIII · The Emperor Henry	211

The Preaching and the Crusaders

I

In the time of Pope Innocent and King Philip, Fulk of Neuilly preaches the cross, and God works great miracles through him. Thibaut of Champagne, Baldwin of Flanders, and many others take the cross; Robert names the bishops and barons who went, and then the knights, rich and poor, who did the most deeds of arms, the clerk Aleaume of Clari among them. The barons make Thibaut their lord; he soon dies, leaving his money to the host, and Fulk dies too.

Ichi commenche li prologues de Coustantinoble, comment

Here begins the prologue of Constantinople how

ele fu prise; après si orrés pour coi on i ala.

it was taken afterward so you-will-hear for what one there went

Chi commenche li estoires de chiaus qui conquisent

Here begins the history of those who conquered

Coustantinoble; si vous dirons après qui il furent et par

Constantinople so to-you we-will-tell afterward who they were and by

quele raison il i alerent. Il avint, en ichel tans que li

what reason they there went It happened in that time that the

papes Innocens estoit apostoiles de Roume, et Phelippes rois

pope Innocent was pope of Rome and Philip king

de Franche, uns autres Phelippes ert qui estoit empereres

of France an other Philip was who was emperor

d'Alemaingne, et le incarnations estoit de .m. et .cc.

of-Germany and the incarnation was of thousand and two-hundred

et. .iij. ans ou .iiij., que uns prestres estoit, maistres Foukes

and three years or four that a priest was master Fulk

avoit a non, qui estoit de Nuelli, une parroisse qui est en

had as name who was of Neuilly a parish which is in

l'evesquié de Paris. Ichis prestres estoit molt preudons et

the-bishopric of Paris This priest was very worthy-man and

molt boins clerks, et aloit preeschant par les teres des
very good clerk and went preaching through the lands of-the
 crois, et molt de gent le sivoient, pour chou qu'il estoit si
crosses and many of people him followed for this that-he was so
 preudons que Damedieus faisoit molt grans miracles pour lui;
worthy-man that Lord-God did very great miracles for him
 et molt conquist chis prestres d'avoir a porter en le sainte
and much gained this priest of-wealth to carry into the holy
 tere d'outre mer. Adont si fu croisiés li cuens Thiebaus de
land of-beyond sea Then so was crossed the count Thibaut of
 Champaingne et Bauduins, li cuens de Flandres, et Henris
Champagne and Baldwin the count of Flanders and Henry
 ses freres, et Loeis, li cuens de Blois, et Hues, li cuens
his brother and Louis the count of Blois and Hugh the count
 de Saint Pol, et Symons, li cuens de Monfort, et Guis
of Saint Pol and Simon the count of Montfort and Guy
 ses freres. Après si nommerons les vesques qui y furent.
his brother Afterward so we-will-name the bishops who there were
 Il y fu li vesques Nevelons de Sessions, qui molt y fu
It there was the bishop Nivelon of Soissons who very there was
 preudons et vallans en tous commans et en tous besoins,
worthy-man and worthy in all commands and in all needs
 et li vesques Warniers de Troies et li vesques de Hanetaist
and the bishop Garnier of Troyes and the bishop of Halberstadt
 en Alemaingne et maistres Jehans de Noion, qui estoit
in Germany and master John of Noyon who was
 eslis a estre evesques d'Acre. Et si y fu li abbes de Los
elected to be bishop of-Acre And so there was the abbot of Loos
 en Flandres, qui estoit de maisons de l'ordre de Chistiax
in Flanders who was of houses of the-order of Cîteaux
 (ichis abbes estoit molt sages hons et molt preudons), et
this abbot was very wise man and very worthy-man and

autres abés et autres clers assés que nous ne vous savons
other abbots and other clerks plenty that we not to-you know
 mie tous nommer. Et des barons qui y furent, nous ne
at-all all to-name And of-the barons who there were we not
 les savons mie tous nommer, mais une partie vous en
them know at-all all to-name but a part to-you thereof
 savons nous nommer. Il y fu d'Aminois mesires Pierres
know we to-name It there was of-Amiénois my-lord Peter
 d'Amiens, li biaux chevaliers et li preus et li vaillans, et
of-Amiens the fair knight and the valiant and the worthy and
 mesires Engerrans de Bove, lui quart de freres: li uns en
my-lord Enguerrand of Boves him fourth of brothers the one thereof
 eut a non Robers, li autres Hues, et uns clers leur freres;
had as name Robert the other Hugh and a clerk their brother
 Bauduins de Biauveoir, Mahiex de Wauslaincourt, li avoés
Baldwin of Beauvoir Matthew of Walincourt the advocate
 de Betune et Quenes ses freres, Wistasses de Canteleu,
of Béthune and Conon his brother Eustace of Canteleux
 Ansiex de Caieu, Reniers de Trit, Wales de Friuses, Girars
Anseau of Cayeux Renier of Trith Walo of Friuses Gerard
 de Manchicort et Nicholes de Malli, Bauduins Cavarom,
of Manchicourt and Nicholas of Mailly Baldwin Cavarom
 Hues de Biauvais, et molt d'autres chevaliers haus hommes,
Hugh of Beauvais and many of-other knights high men
 qui Flamenc estoient et d'autres païs, que nous ne vous
who Flemish were and of-other countries that we not to-you
 savons mie tous nommer; et si y fu mesires Jakes
know at-all all to-name and so there was my-lord James
 d'Avesnes. Et si y fu de Bourgogne Odes de Chanlite
of-Avesnes And so there was of Burgundy Odo of Champlitte
 et Willames ses freres, qui molt eurent de gent en l'ost;
and William his brother who many had of people in the-host

et si en y eut d'autres assés de Borgoune que nous
and so thereof there had of-others plenty of Burgundy that we
 ne vous savons mie tous nommer. Et de Champagne y
not to-you know at-all all to-name And of Champagne there
 fu li mareschiex et Ogiers de Saint Cherun et Macaires
was the marshal and Ogier of Saint Chéron and Macaire
 de Sainte Manehout, et Clarembaus de Chapes et Miles
of Sainte Menebould and Clarembaud of Chappes and Miles
 de Braibant: ichist estoient de Champaingne. Après si y
of Brabant these were of Champagne Afterward so there
 fu li castelains de Couchi, Robers de Rouschoi, Mahiex
was the castellan of Coucy Robert of Ronsoy Matthew
 de Monmorenchi, qui molt y fu preudons, Raous d'Aunoi
of Montmorency who very there was worthy-man Ralph of-Aunoy
 et Wautiers ses fix et Gilles d'Aunoi, Pierres de Braichel,
and Walter his son and Giles of-Aunoy Peter of Bracieux
 li preus chevaliers et li hardis et li vaillans, et Hues
the valiant knight and the bold and the worthy and Hugh
 ses freres: et chist que je vous nomme ichi estoient de
his brother and these whom I to-you name here were of
 Franche et de Biauvesis. Et de Chartain y fu Gervaise
France and of Beauvaisis And of Chartrain there was Gervase
 du Castel et Hervius ses fix et Oliviers de Rochefort, et
of-the Châtel and Hervé his son and Oliver of Rochefort and
 Pierres d'Alos et Paiens d'Orliens, Pierres d'Amiens, boins
Peter of-Alos and Payen of-Orléans Peter of-Amiens good
 chevaliers et preus et qui molt y fist de proeschies, et
knight and valiant and who much there did of prowess and
 Thumas, uns clers, ses freres, qui canoines estoit d'Amiens,
Thomas a clerk his brother who canon was of-Amiens
 Manessiers de Lille en Flandres, Mahiex de Monmorenchi, li
Manasses of Lille in Flanders Matthew of Montmorency the

castelains de Corbie. Or y eut il tant d'autres chevaliers
castellan of Corbie Now there had it so-many of-other knights
 de Franche et de Flandres et de Champaingne et de
of France and of Flanders and of Champagne and of
 Bourgoune et d'autres païs que nous ne vous savons mie
Burgundy and of-other countries that we not to-you know at-all
 tous nommer, de vaillans chevaliers et de preus; et chiaus
all to-name of worthy knights and of valiant and those
 que nous avons chi nommés li plus rike homme estoient,
whom we have here named the most rich men were
 et si portoient baniere, et si n'avons nous mie tous chiaus
and so bore banner and so not-have we at-all all those
 nommés qui portoient banieres. Et de chiaux qui plus y
named who bore banners And of those who most there
 fisent de proeschés et d'armes, de riches et de povres,
did of prowess and of-arms of rich and of poor
 vous savons nous nommer une partie: Pierres de Braiechel,
to-you know we to-name a part Peter of Bracieux
 che fu chis de povres et de riches qui plus y fist de
this was this-one of poor and of rich who most there did of
 proeschés, et Hues ses freres et Andriex de Dureboise et
prowess and Hugh his brother and Andrew of Dureboise and
 mesires Pierres d'Amiens, li preus et li biaux, et Mahiex
my-lord Peter of-Amiens the valiant and the fair and Matthew
 de Monmorenchi et Mahieus de Wauslaincort et Bauduins
of Montmorency and Matthew of Walincourt and Baldwin
 de Biauveoir et Henris, li freres le conte de Flandres,
of Beauvoir and Henry the brother (of-)the count of Flanders
 et Jakes d'Avesnes: che furent chil des riches hommes qui
and James of-Avesnes these were those of-the rich men who
 plus y fisent d'armes. Et des povres, Bernars d'Arie et
most there did of-arms And of-the poor Bernard of-Aire and

Bernars de Soubrengien, Wistasses de Heemont et ses freres,

Bernard of Soubrengien Eustace of Heumont and his brother

Gillebers de Vime, Wales de Friuses, Hues de Biauvais,

Gilbert of Vimes Walo of Friuses Hugh of Beauvais

Robers de Ronschoi, Alars Makereaus, Nicholes de Malli,

Robert of Ronsoy Alard Maquereau Nicholas of Mailly

Guis de Manchicort, Bauduins de Hamelaincort, Willames

Guy of Manchicourt Baldwin of Hamelincourt William

d'Embrevile, Aleaumes de Clari en Aminois li clers, qui

of-Embreville Aleaume of Clari in Amiénois the clerk who

molt y fu preus et molt y fist de hardement et de

very there was valiant and much there did of boldness and of

proeschies, Aleaumes de Sains, Willerames de Fontaines. Et

prowess Aleaume of Sains Wilram of Fontaines And

chiaux que nous avons ichi nommés, che furent chil qui

those whom we have here named these were those who

plus y fissent d'armes et de proeschies; et molt d'autre

most there did of-arms and of prowess and many of-other

boine gent a cheval et a pié, tant de milliers que nous

good people on horse and on foot so-many of thousands that we

n'en savons le nombre.

not-thereof know the number

2 Après s'asamblèrent tout li conte et li haut baron qui

Afterward themselves-assembled all the counts and the high barons who

croisié estoient. Si manderent tous les haus hommes qui

crossed were So they-summoned all the high men who

croisié estoient, et quant il vinrent tout ensamble, si

crossed were and when they came all together so

prisent conseil entr'aus de qui il feroient chievetaine

they-took counsel among-themselves of whom they would-make chieftain

d'aus et seigneur, tant qu'il prisent le conte Thiebaut de

of-them and lord so-far that-they took the count Thibaut of

Champaingne, si en fisent lor seigneur; puis si se
Champagne so thereof they-made their lord then so themselves
 departirent, si s'en ala cascuns en son païs. Et puis
departed so himself-thence went each into his country And then
 ne demoura mie gramment après que li cuens Tiebaus
not delayed at-all greatly after that the count Thibaut
 morut, si laissa .l.m. livres as croisiés et a chelui qui
died so he-left fifty-thousand pounds to-the crusaders and to him who
 après lui seroit kievetaïne et sires des croisiés, et a metre
after him would-be chieftain and lord of-the crusaders and to put
 la ou li croisié vauroient. Et si morut aussi maistres
there where the crusaders would-wish And so died also master
 Foukes, dont che fu molt grans damages avec les croisiés.
Fulk whereof this was very great harm with the crusaders

Boniface Takes the Cross

II

Grieved by these deaths, the crusaders meet at Soissons and send for the marquis of Montferrat in Lombardy. He crosses the mountains by Mont-Joux and is received with great feasting. The barons ask him to be their lord in Thibaut's place and promise him a great part of Thibaut's money; he takes the cross from the bishop of Soissons for the love of God and to succor the land beyond the sea, and is given twenty-five thousand pounds.

Quant li croisié seurent que li cuens de Champaingne, leur 3
When the crusaders knew that the count of Champagne their
 sires, fu mors, et maistres Foukes ausi, si en furent molt
lord was dead and master Fulk also so thereof they-were very
 dolent et molt corchié et molt esmari; et s'asanlerent a
sorrowful and very angered and very dismayed and themselves-assembled on

un jour tout a Sessons, et prisent conseil entr'aus que il
one day all at Soissons and took counsel among-themselves what they
 feroient et de qui il feroient kievetaine et seigneur d'aus,
would-do and of whom they would-make chieftain and lord of-them
 tant qu'il s'acorderent entr'aus qu'il envoieroient pour
so-far that-they themselves-agreed among-themselves that-they would-send for
 le marchis de Monferras en Lombardie. Il i envoierent
the marquis of Montferrat in Lombardy They there sent
 molt boins messages pour lui. Li message s'apareillierent,
very good messengers for him The messengers themselves-prepared
 si s'en alerent au marchis. Quant il vinrent la, si
so themselves-thence went to-the marquis When they came there so
 parlerent au marchis et si li disent que li baron de
they-spoke to-the marquis and so to-him said that the barons of
 Franche le saluoient, et qu'il li mandoient et prioient
France him greeted and that-they to-him sent-word and prayed
 pour Dieu que il venist parler a aus a un jor qu'il li
for God that he should-come to-speak to them on a day that-they to-him
 nommerent. Quant li marchis oï che, si se merveilla molt
named When the marquis heard this so himself marveled much
 de chou que li baron de Franche l'avoient mandé; si respondi
of this that the barons of France him-had summoned so he-answered
 as messages qu'il s'en conseileroit et l'endemain leur
to-the messengers that-he himself-thereof would-counsel and the-next-day to-them
 lairoit savoir qu'il en vaurroit faire, et fist molt feste des
would-let know what-he thereof would-wish to-do and made much feast of-the
 messages. Quant che vint l'endemain, si leur dist li marchis
messengers When this came the-next-day so to-them said the marquis
 qu'il iroit parler a aus a Sessons, a tel jor comme il
that-he would-go to-speak to them at Soissons on such day as they
 li avoient nommé. Adont li message prisent congié, si
to-him had named Then the messengers took leave so

s'en revinrent; et li marchis leur offri de ses chevax
themselves-thence came-back and the marquis to-them offered of his horses
 et de ses joiaus, mais il n'en vaurrent nul prendre. Et
and of his jewels but they not-thereof wished any to-take And
 quant il furent revenu, si fisent savoir as barons qu'il
when they were returned so they-made known to-the barons what-they
 avoient fait. Adont atira li marchis sen oirre, et passa les
had done Then arranged the marquis his journey and crossed the
 mons de Mongiu et s'en vint en Franche a Sessions,
mountains of Mont-Joux and himself-thence came into France to Soissons
 et fist savoir as barons par devant que il venoit, et li
and made known to-the barons in advance that he was-coming and the
 baron furent la encontre lui et fisent molt grant feste de lui.
barons were there to-meet him and made very great feast of him
 Quant li marchis fu venus a Sessions, si demanda as barons 4
When the marquis was come to Soissons so he-asked of-the barons
 pour coi il l'avoient mandé. Et li baron furent consellié, se
for what they him-had summoned And the barons were counseled so
 li disent: «Sire, nous vous avons mandé pour che que li
to-him said Lord we you have summoned for this that the
 cuens de Champaingne, nos sires, qui estoit nos maistres, est
count of Champagne our lord who was our master is
 mors; et nous vous mandames pour le plus preudomme que
dead and we you summoned for the most worthy-man that
 nous saviemes, et qui le greigneur conseil pooit metre en
we knew and who the greatest counsel could put into
 nostre afaire, le voie Damedieu! Si vous proions tout pour
our affair the way (of-)Lord-God So you we-pray all for
 Dieu que vous soiés nos sires, et que vous pour l'amour de
God that you be our lord and that you for the-love of
 Damedieu pregniés le crois.» Et a ches paroles s'agenouillierent
Lord-God take the cross And at these words themselves-knelt

li baron devant lui, et se li dirent qu'il ne s'esmaiaist
the barons before him and so to-him said that-he not himself-should-dismay
 mie d'avoir pourcachier, que il li dourroient grant partie de
at-all of-wealth to-procure for they to-him would-give great part of
 l'avoir que li cuens de Champaingne avoit laissié as croisiés.
the-wealth that the count of Champagne had left to-the crusaders
 Li marchis dist que il s'en conselleroit; et quant il se
The marquis said that he himself-thereof would-counsel and when he himself
 fu conseilliés, si respondi que, pour l'amour de Dieu et pour
was counseled so he-answered that for the-love of God and for
 secorre le tere d'outre mer, prendroit il le crois. Et li vesques
to-succor the land of-beyond sea would-take he the cross And the bishop
 de Sessions fu tantost apareilliés, si li donna le crois. Et
of Soissons was at-once ready so to-him gave the cross And
 quant il l'eut prise, si li donna on de l'avoir que li cuens
when he it-had taken so to-him gave one of the-wealth that the count
 de Champaingne avoit laissié as croisiés .xxv. mile livres.
of Champagne had left to-the crusaders twenty-five thousand pounds

The Treaty with Venice

III

The barons will not go to Syria, where they could do the Saracens no harm, but to Babylon or Alexandria, and they resolve to hire a fleet. Conon of Béthune and the marshal of Champagne find no help at Genoa or Pisa, but the doge of Venice, after taking counsel, offers ships for a hundred thousand marks, fifty galleys at his own cost, and to go himself with half the Venetians, for half the conquests. They bargain him down, and he asks twenty-five thousand marks in earnest.

Après quant li marchis fu croissiés, si dist as barons: 5

Afterward when the marquis was crossed so he-said to-the barons

«Seigneur,» fist li marchis, «ou vaurrés vous passer, ne en

Lords said the marquis where will-wish you to-cross or into

quel tere de Sarrasins vaurés vous aler?» Li baron respondirent

what land of Saracens will-wish you to-go The barons answered

que en le tere de Surie ne voloient il mie aler, car il

that into the land of Syria not wished they at-all to-go for they

n'i porroient riens forfaire; mais il avoient pourposé a

not-there could anything do-harm but they had resolved to

aler en Babyloine ou en Alexandre tres en mi aus la

go into Babylon or into Alexandria right in midst-of them there

ou il leur peussent plus forfaire, et avoient pourposement

where they to-them could more do-harm and had purpose

de liwer estoire qui tous ensanle les y passast. Adont dist

to hire fleet which all together them there would-ferry Then said

li marchis que ch'estoit boins consaus, et que il s'i

the marquis that this-was good counsel and that he himself-thereto

acordoit bien, et que on y envoiait bons messages des

agreed well and that one there should-send good messengers of-the

plus sages chevaliers d'aus ou a Pise ou a Genvre ou
most wise knights of-them either to Pisa or to Genoa or
 en Venice; a chest consaus s'acordent tot li baron.

to Venice to this counsel themselves-agree all the barons

- 6 Adont si atirerent leurs messages. Si atirerent tout que
Then so they-arranged their messengers So they-arranged all that
 mesires Quenes de Betune y ala et li mareschaus de
my-lord Conon of Bêthune there went and the marshal of
 Champaingne; puis quant il eurent atiré leur messages, si
Champagne then when they had arranged their messengers so
 se departirent li baron, et li marchis s'en en ala
themselves departed the barons and the marquis himself-thence — went
 en son païs et li autre ausi cascuns. Si kemanda on as
into his country and the others also each So commanded one to-the
 messages que il liuassent waissiaus a passer .iiij. m.
messengers that they should-bire vessels to ferry four thousand
 chevaliers et leur harnas et .c.m. hommes a pié.

knights and their harness and hundred-thousand men on foot

Li message atornerent leur oirre et s'en alerent tout

The messengers prepared their journey and themselves-thence went all

droit tant qu'il vinrent a Genvres, et parlerent a Genevois

straight so-far that-they came to Genoa and spoke to Genoese

et disent leur chou qu'il queroient, et li Genevois disent

and said to-them this that-they sought and the Genoese said

qu'il ne leur en porroient nient aidier. Il s'en

that-they not them therein could at-all help They themselves-thence

alerent après a Pise et parlerent a chiaux de Pise, et il

went afterward to Pisa and spoke to those of Pisa and they

leur respondirent qu'il n'aroient mie tant de vaissaus et

to-them answered that-they not-would-have at-all so-many of vessels and

qu'il ne porroient nient faire. Après si s'en alerent

that-they not could anything do Afterward so themselves-thence went

en Venice, si parlerent au duc de Venice et disent che qu'il
to Venice so they-spoke to-the doge of Venice and said this that-they
 estoient quis, que il queroient passage a liwer a .iiij.m.
were seeking that they sought passage to hire for four-thousand
 chevaliers et leurs harnas et a .c.m. hommes a pié.
knights and their harness and for hundred-thousand men on foot
 Quant li dux oï che, si dist qu'il s'en conseilleroit,
When the doge heard this so he-said that-he himself-thereof would-counsel
 que de si grant afaire se devoit on bien conseiller. Adont
for of so great affair oneself ought one well counsel Then
 si manda li dux tous les haus consaus de le vile, et parla
so summoned the doge all the high councils of the town and spoke
 a aus et leur monstra chou que on li avoit requis.
to them and to-them showed this that one of-him had requested
 Et quant il se furent bien conseillé, si respondi li
And when they themselves were well counseled so answered the
 dux as messages et leur dist: «Seigneur, nous ferons
doge to-the messengers and to-them said Lords we will-make
 volentiers markié a vous, si vous troverons assés navie pour
gladly bargain with you so to-you will-find enough navy for
 .c.m. mars, se vous volés, par tel convenant que g'irai
hundred-thousand marks if you wish on such covenant that I-will-go
 avec, et le moitié qui armes porront porter de toute Vinice,
with and the half who arms will-be-able bear of all Venice
 et par si que nous aions le motié de totes les conquestes
and on such that we have the half of all the conquests
 que on y conquerra; et si vous mesrons chinquante galies
that one there will-conquer and so to-you will-put fifty galleys
 a no coust, et de chu jour que nous nommerons en un
at our cost and from this day that we will-name in one
 an, nous vous mesrons en quele tere que vous vaurrés,
year we you will-put into whatever land that you will-wish

veuillés en Babyloine, veuillés en Alexandre. Quant li
wish into Babylon wish into Alexandria When the
 message oïrent chou, si respondirent que che seroit trop
messengers heard this so they-answered that this would-be too-much
 en .c.m. mars, et tant parlerent ensanle qu'il fissent
at hundred-thousand marks and so-long they-spoke together that-they made
 markié par .lxxx.m. mars et .vij., si que li dux et li
bargain for eighty-thousand marks and seven so that the doge and the
 Venicien et li message jurerent a tenir chu markié. Après
Venetians and the messengers swore to hold this bargain Afterward
 dist li dux qu'il voloit avoir .xxv.m. mars d'eres
said the doge that-he wished to-have twenty-five-thousand marks of-earnest
 a commenchier le navie; et li message respondirent qu'il
to begin the navy and the messengers answered that-he
 envoiait messages avec aus en Franche, et il leur feroient
should-send messengers with them into France and they to-them would-have
 volentiers paier les .xxv.m. mars. Après li message
gladly paid the twenty-five-thousand marks Afterward the messengers
 prisent congié, si s'en revinrent; et li dux envoia
took leave so themselves-thence came-back and the doge sent
 avec aus un haut homme de Venice pour recevoir les heres.
with them a high man of Venice for to-receive the earnest

The Muster at Venice

IV

The doge forbids every Venetian to trade and sets the city to building the richest fleet ever seen. At Corbie the barons praise their envoys and send the doge's man home with twenty-five thousand marks from Count Thibaut's money, from what Fulk had gathered, and from the count of Flanders. The crusaders are summoned to be at Venice between Pentecost and August, and after Easter they set out, leaving fathers, mothers, sisters, brothers, wives, and children in grief.

Aprés si fist li dux crier sen ban par tote Venice que nus 7
Afterward so had the doge cried his ban through all Venice that any
Veniciens ne fust si hardis qu'il alast en nule markaandise,
Venetian not should-be so bold that-be should-go into any trade
ains aidaissent tout a faire le navie, et il si fisent. Si
but should-help all to make the navy and they so did So
commenchierent le plus rike navie que onques fust veue.
they-began the most rich navy that ever was seen
Quant li message vinrent en Franche, si fisent savoir qu'il 8
When the messengers came into France so they-made known that-they
estoient venu. Puis si manda on tous les barons croisiés
were come Then so summoned one all the barons crossed
qu'il venissent tot a Corbie. Et quant il y furent venu
that-they should-come all to Corbie And when they there were come
tout ensanle, si disent li message chou qu'il avoient trouvé.
all together so said the messengers this that-they had found
Quant li baron l'oïrent, si en furent molt lié, et molt
When the barons it-heard so thereof they-were very glad and much
loerent chou qu'il avoient fait, et fisent molt honneur as
praised this that-they had done and made much honor to-the
messages le duc de Venice, et si leur bailla on des
messengers (of-)the doge of Venice and so to-them delivered one of-the

deniers le conte de Champaingne et des deniers que
pence (of-)the count of Champagne and of-the pence that
 maistres Foukes avoit pourchachiés, et si i mist li quens de
master Fulk had procured and so there put the count of
 Flandres de ses deniers tant qu'il en i eut .xxv.m.

Flanders of his pence so-far that-it thereof there had twenty-five-thousand
 mars. Si les balla on au message le duc de Venice, et
marks So them delivered one to-the messenger (of-)the doge of Venice and
 si bailla on boin conduit a aler avec lui dusques en sen païs.
so gave one good escort to go with him as-far into his country

- 9 Puis manda on tous les croisiés par toutes les teres,
Then summoned one all the crusaders through all the lands
 qu'il meussent a le Pasque tout a aler en Venice entre
that-they should-set-out at the Easter all to go into Venice between
 le Pentecouste et l'aoust sans nule faille, et il si fisent.
the Pentecost and the-August without any fail and they so did

Et quant le Pasque fu passee, si y vinrent trestout.

And when the Easter was passed so there came all-of-them
 Assés y eut peres et meres, sereurs et freres, femmes
Plenty there had fathers and mothers sisters and brothers wives
 et enfans, qui grant duel fisent de leur amis.
and children who great grief made of their friends

The Host at Venice Cannot Pay

V

The pilgrims marvel at the fleet and camp on the island of Saint Nicholas, and the Venetians who must sail are chosen by lot. The doge complains that the host is far short of the numbers promised and demands his covenants. One collection leaves fifty thousand marks unpaid, and a second, with much borrowing, thirty-six thousand. Rather than be called cheats, the doge offers passage if they repay that sum from their first conquests, and the camp blazes with torches for joy.

Quant li pelerin furent tot asanlé en Venice et il virrent 10

When the pilgrims were all assembled in Venice and they saw
le rike navie qui faite estoit, les rikes nes, les grans dromons
the rich navy which made was the rich ships the great dromons
et les uissiers a mener les chevax et les galies, si
and the horse-transporters to lead the horses and the galleys so
s'en merveillierent molt et de le grant riqueche que
themselves-thereat marveled much and of the great richness that
il troverent en le vile. Quant il virrent qu'il ne se
they found in the town When they saw that-they not themselves
pooient mie tout herbegier en le vile, si se consellierent
could at-all all lodge in the town so themselves counseled
entr'aus qu'il s'iroient logier en l'isle Saint Nicholai,
among-themselves that-they themselves-would-go to-lodge on the-isle Saint Nicholas
qui tote estoit enclose de mer, qui estoit a une liwe de
which all was enclosed by sea which was at a league from
Venice. La s'en alerent li pelerin, et drechierent
Venice There themselves-thence went the pilgrims and raised
leur tentes et se logierent au miex qu'il peurent.
their tents and themselves lodged at-the best that-they could

- 11 Quant li dux de Venice vit que tot li pelerin furent venu,
When the doge of Venice saw that all the pilgrims were come
 si manda tous chiaus de se terre de Venice. Et quant il
so summoned all those of his land of Venice And when they
 furent tout venu, si kemanda li dux que le motié d'aus
were all come so commanded the doge that the half of-them
 s'atornaissent et aparellaissent a aler en l'estoire avec les
themselves-should-equip and should-prepare to go in the-fleet with the
 pelerins. Quant li Venicien oïrent chou, si s'esjoièrent li
pilgrims When the Venetians heard this so themselves-rejoiced the
 un; li autre disent qu'il n'i pooient aler; ne ne se
ones the others said that-they not-there could go nor not themselves
 pooient acorder ensanle comment le moitié d'aus y peust
could agree together how the half of-them there could
 aler. Et tant qu'il fissent un sort, que il faisoient doi
go And so-far that-they made a lot that they made two
 et doi ensanle deus noiaus de chire, si metoient en l'un
and two together two balls of wax so put in the-one
 un brievet, et venoient au prestre, se li donnoient;
a slip and came to-the priest so to-him gave
 et li prestres les prinsegnoit, et donnoit a cascun des
and the priest them signed and gave to each of-the
 deux Veniciens un de ches noiaus, et chil qui avoit le
two Venetians one of these balls and that-one who had the
 noiel au brief, si couvenoit qu'il alast en l'estoire. Ensi
ball with-the slip so behooved that-he should-go in the-fleet Thus
 se partirent. Si comme li pelerin se furent logié
themselves divided So as the pilgrims themselves were lodged
 en l'isle Saint Nicholai, si ala li dux de Venice et li
on the-isle Saint Nicholas so went the doge of Venice and the
 Venicien parler a aus, et demanderent leur convenanches
Venetians to-speak to them and asked their covenants

du navie qu'il avoient fait atirer. Et si leur dist li
of-the navy that-they had had arranged And so to-them said the
 dux qu'il avoient mal fait de chou qu'il avoient mandé
doge that-they had ill done of this that-they had sent-the
 par leur messages qu'il appareillaissent navie a .iiij.m.
by their messengers that-they should-prepare navy for four-thousand
 chevaliers et a leur harnas et a .c.m. hommes a
knights and for their harness and for hundred-thousand men on
 pié, et des ches .iiij.m. chevaliers n'i avoit il mie
foot and of these four-thousand knights not-there had it at-all
 plus d'un millier, qu'il estoient alé as autres pors, ne
more than-a thousand for-they were gone to-the other ports nor
 de ches .c. mille hommes a pié n'i avoit mie plus
of these hundred thousand men on foot not-there had at-all more
 de .l. mile ou de .lx.: «Dont nous volons», fist li dux,
than fifty thousand or than sixty Then we wish said the doge
 «que vous nous païés les convenanches, que on nous eut
that you to-us pay the covenants that one to-us had
 en convenent.» Quant li croisié oïrent chou, si parlerent
in covenant When the crusaders heard this so they-spoke
 ensanle; si eswarderent entr'aus que cascuns chevaliers
together so determined among-themselves that each knight
 donroit quatre mars, et cascuns chevax quatre et cascuns
would-give four marks and each horse four and each
 serjans a cheval deus mars, et chis qui mains li donroit,
sergeant on horse two marks and he who least to-him would-give
 si donroit un marc. Quant il eurent ches deniers cueillis,
so would-give one mark When they had these pence gathered
 si les paierent as Veniciens, si remesent encore .l. mile
so them they-paid to-the Venetians so remained still fifty thousand
 mars a paier. Quant li dux et li Venicien virrent que li
marks to pay When the doge and the Venetians saw that the

pelerin ne leur avoient plus paié, si furent tout corchié,
pilgrims not to-them had more paid so they-were all angered
 tant que li dux parla a aus: «Seigneur,» fist il, «vous nous
so-far that the doge spoke to them Lords said he you us
 avés mal baillis, car si tost comme vo message eurent fait
have ill treated for so soon as your messengers had made
 convent a mi et a me gent, kemandai jou par tote
covenant with me and with my people commanded I through all
 me tere que nus marcaans n'alast marcaander, ains aidast
my land that any merchant not-should-go to-trade but should-help
 a apareillier cheste navie, et il y unt puis tous jours
to prepare this navy and they there have since all days
 attendu, ne n'i waaingnierent rien passé a un an et
waited nor not-there gained anything passed has a year and
 demi. Ains y ont molt perdu; et pour chou veulent
half But there they-have much lost and for this wish
 mi homme et jou ausi, que vous paiés les deniers que vous
my men and I also that you pay the pence that you
 nous devés. Et se vous ensi nel faites, sachiés que vous ne
to-us owe And if you thus not-it do know that you not
 vous moverés de cheste isle devant la que nous serons
yourselves will-move from this isle before there that we will-be
 paié, ne ne troverés qui vous port ne que boire ne que
paid nor not will-find who to-you may-bring either what to-drink or what
 menger.» Li dux fut molt preudons, si ne lascia mie pour
to-eat The doge was very worthy-man so not left-off at-all for
 chou que on ne leur portast assés a boire et a menger.
this that one — to-them should-bring plenty to drink and to eat

12 Quant li conte et li homme croisié oïrent chou que li
When the counts and the men crossed heard this that the
 dux avoit dit, si furent molt dolent et molt esmari. Si
doge had said so they-were very sorrowful and very dismayed So

refisent une autre cuelloite, et emprunterent tant de
they-made-again an other collection and borrowed so-much of
deniers comme il peurent a chiaux qu'il quidoient qui
pence as they could from those whom-they believed who
en eussent. Si les paierent as Veniciens, et quant il
thereof had So them they-paid to-the Venetians and when they
les eurent païés, si demorerent encore a paier .xxxvi.m.
them had paid so remained still to pay thirty-six-thousand
mars; et si leur disent qu'il estoient maubailli, et que
marks and so to-them said that-they were ill-treated and that
l'os estoit molt apovriie de chele cuelloite qu'il avoient
the-host was very impoverished by that collection that-they had
fait, et qu'il ne pooient plus pourcachier de deniers qu'il
made and that-they not could more procure of pence that-they
leur paiaissent, ains en avoient assés povrement a leur
to-them might-pay but thereof had quite poorly to their
ost maintenir. Quant li dux vit qu'il ne pooient mie
host maintain When the doge saw that-they not could at-all
tous les deniers paier, ains en estoient molt a mal aise,
all the pence pay but thereby were very at ill ease
si parla a se gent et si leur dist: «Seigneur,» fist il,
so he-spoke to his people and so to-them said Lords said he
«se nous laissons aler ches gens en leur païs, nous serons
if we let go these people into their country we will-be
mais tous jours tenu pour malvais et pour trikeeur. Mais
henceforth all days held for wicked and for tricksters But
alons dusques a aus, et si leur disons que, s'il nous
let-us-go as-far to them and so to-them let-us-say that if-they to-us
veullent rendre ches .xxxvi.m. mars que il nous doivent
wish to-render these thirty-six-thousand marks that they to-us owe
des premeraines conquestes qu'il feront et qu'il aront
from-the first conquests that-they will-make and that-they will-have

a leur partie, que nous les mesrons outre mer.» Li Venicien
to their part that we them will-put beyond sea The Venetians
 s'acorderent bien a chou que li dux avoit dit. Dont si
themselves-agreed well to this that the doge had said Then so
 alerent as pelerins la ou il s'estoient logié. Si comme
they-went to-the pilgrims there where they themselves-were lodged So as
 il furent la venu, si leur dist li dux: «Seigneur,» fist
they were there come so to-them said the doge Lords said
 il, «nous avons pris conseil entre mi et me gent en tele
he we have taken counsel between me and my people in such
 maniere que, se vous nous volés greanter loiaument que vous
manner that if you to-us wish to-grant loyally that you
 nous paierés ches .xxxvi.m. mars que vous nous devés a
to-us will-pay these thirty-six-thousand marks that you to-us owe at
 le premeraine conquete que vous ferés de vo partie, nous
the first conquest that you will-make of your part we
 vous mesrons outre mer.» Quant li croisie oïrent cho que
you will-put beyond sea When the crusaders heard this that
 li dux leur avoit dit et moustré, si en furent molt lié
the doge to-them had said and shown so thereof they-were very glad
 et se li caïrent as piés de goie, et se li creanterent
and so to-him fell at-the feet for joy and so to-him promised
 loiaument qu'il feroient molt volontiers chou que li dux
loyally that-they would-do very gladly this that the doge
 avoit devisé. Si fisent si grant goie le nuit qu'il n'i
had proposed So they-made so great joy the night that-it not-there
 eut si povre qui ne fesist grant luminaire, et portoient en
had so poor who not made great illumination and they-bore on
 son les lanches grans torkes de candeilles entor leur loges
top-of the lances great torches of candles around their lodges
 et par dedens, que che sanloit que tote l'os fust esprise.
and by within so-that it seemed that all the-host were afire

Zara

VI

The doge proposes to winter at Zara, which has wronged Venice, and only the high men know the plan. The fleet sails out to silver trumpets and the Veni creator, the fairest sight since the world began. At Zara the doge disregards the pope's letters of excommunication; Simon of Montfort and Enguerrand of Boves refuse and go to Hungary. The town surrenders, a brawl is quelled, the bishop of Soissons brings absolution, and the host finds itself too poor to go on.

Aprés vint li dux a aus, si leur dist: «Seigneur, il est 13
Afterward came the doge to them so to-them said Lords it is
ore yvers, ne nous ne porriemes passer mie outre mer, ne
now winter nor we not could cross at-all beyond sea nor
che n'est mie remés en mi, car je vous eusse piecha fait
this not-is at-all stayed in me for I you would-have long-ago had
passer, s'il ne fust remés en vous. Mais faisons le bien!» fist
cross if-it not were stayed in you But let-us-do it well said
li dux, «Il a une chité pres de chi, Jadres a a non. Chil
the doge It has a city near of here Zara has as name Those
de le vile nous ont molt meffait, et jou et mi homme
of the town us have much wronged and I and my men
nous volons vengier d'aus, se nous poons. Et se vous me
ourselves wish to-avenge of-them if we can And if you me
volés croire, nous y irons chest yver sejourner dusques vers
wish to-believe we there will-go this winter to-sojourn until toward
le Pasque; et adonc si atierrons no navie, si nous en
the Easter and then so we-will-arrange our navy so ourselves thence
irons outre mer a l'aiue Damedieu. Et le vile de Jadres
will-go beyond sea with the-aid (of-)Lord-God And the town of Zara
est mout boine et molt plentiive de tous biens!» Li barom
is very good and very plentiful of all goods The barons

et li haut homme croisié s'asentirent a chou que li
and the high men crossed themselves-assented to this that the
 dux avoit dit; mes tout chil de l'ost ne seurent mie chest
doge had said but all those of the-host not knew at-all this
 conseil, fors li plus haut homme. Adont si atirerent tout
counsel except the most high men Then so they-arranged all
 communamment leur oirre et leur navie tout entirement; si
in-common their journey and their navy all entirely so
 se misent en le mer. Et cascuns des haus homes avoit
themselves put into the sea And each of-the high men had
 se nef a lui et a se gent et sen uissier a ses chevax
his ship to him and to his people and his horse-transport to his horses
 mener, et li dux de Venice avoit avec lui chinquante galies
lead and the doge of Venice had with him fifty galleys
 tout a sen coust. Le galie ou ens il estoit ert toute
all at his cost The galley where in he was was all
 vermeille, et si avoit un pavillon tendu par deseure lui
vermilion and so it-had a canopy stretched right above him
 d'un vermeil samit; si avoit quatre buisines d'argent devant
of-a vermilion samite so it-had four trumpets of-silver before
 lui qui buisinoient et tymbres qui grant goie demenoient.
bim which trumpeted and timbrels which great joy made
 Et tout li haut homme, et clerc et lai et petit et grant,
And all the high men and clerks and lay and small and great
 demenerent si grant goie a l'esmovoir que onques encore
made so great joy at the-setting-out that ever yet
 si faite goie ne si fais estoires ne fu veus ne oï; et
so made joy nor so made fleet not was seen nor heard and
 si fisent li pelerin monter as castiaus des nes tous les
so had the pilgrims mount to-the castles of-the ships all the
 prestres et les clers qui canterent Veni creator spiritus. Et
priests and the clerks who sang Come creator spirit And

trestout et grant et petit plorerent de pec et de le grant
all both great and small wept for pity and for the great
 goie qu'i eurent. Et quant li estoires parti du port
joy that-they had And when the fleet departed from-the port
 de Venice, et *** dromons et ches rikes nes et tant
of Venice and (lacuna) dromons and these rich ships and so-many
 d'autres vaissiaus, que ch'estoit le plus bele cose a eswarder
of-other vessels that this-was the most fair thing to behold
 qui fust tres le commencement du monde, car il y
which was since the beginning of-the world for it there
 avoit bien chent paire de busines, que d'argent que d'arain,
had well hundred pair of trumpets both of-silver and of-brass
 qui toutes sonnerent a l'esmouvoir, et tant de tymbres et
which all sounded at the-setting-out and so-many of timbrels and
 tabours et autres estrumens, que ch'estoit une fine merveille.
drums and other instruments that this-was a pure marvel
 Quant il furent en chele mer et il eurent tendu leur
When they were on that sea and they had stretched their
 voiles et leur banieres mises haut as castiaus des nes et
sails and their banners put high on-the castles of-the ships and
 leur enseingnes, si sanla bien que le mers formiast toute
their ensings so seemed well that the sea teemed all
 et qu'ele fust toute enbrasee des nes qu'il menoient et
and that-it were all ablaze with-the ships that-they led and
 de la grant goie qu'il demenoient. Adont si alerent tant
with the great joy that-they made Then so they-went so-far
 qu'il vinrent a une chité, Poles avoit a non. Illueques
that-they came to a city Pola had as name There
 ariverent, si se rafreskirent, se y sejournerent un peu,
they-arrived so themselves refreshed so there sojourned a little
 tant qu'il furent bien rafreski et qu'il eurent acaté des
so-far that-they were well refreshed and that-they had bought some

nouvelles viandes a metre en leur nes. Après se se
fresh victuals to put in their ships Afterward so themselves
 remisent en le mer. S'il eurent grant goie et grant feste
put-again into the sea If-they had great joy and great feast
 demenee par devant, encore demenerent il adonques ausi
made just before yet made they then as
 grant ou greigneur, si que les gens de le vile s'en
great or greater so that the people of the town themselves-thereat
 merveillierent trop de le grant goie et de grant estoire et
marveled exceedingly of the great joy and of great fleet and
 de le grant nobleche qu'il demenoient; et si disent bien,
of the great nobility that-they displayed and so said well
 et ch'estoit voirs, que onques si biaux estoires ne si rikes ne
and this-was true that ever so fair fleet nor so rich not
 fu veus ne assanlés en nule tere, comme il avoit illueques.
was seen nor assembled in any land as it had there

- 14 Li Venicien et li pelerin se singlerent tant qu'il
The Venetians and the pilgrims themselves sailed so-far that-they
 vinrent a Jadres la nuit de le feste saint Martin. Chil
came to Zara the night of the feast (of-)saint Martin Those
 de le vile de Jadres, quant il virrent ches nes et ches
of the town of Zara when they saw these ships and these
 grans estoires venir, si eurent molt grant peur; si fisent les
great fleets come so had very great fear so had the
 portes de le vile fremer et si s'armerent au miex qu'il
gates of the town shut and so themselves-armed at-the best that-they
 peurent, comme pour aus desfendre. Quant il furent
could as for themselves to-defend When they were
 armé, li dux parla a tous les haus homes de l'ost, si leur
armed the doge spoke to all the high men of the-host so to-them
 dist: «Seignor, cheste vile a molt meffait a mi et a me
said Lords this town has much wronged to me and to my

gent; je m'en vengeroie volentiers. Si vous pri que vous
people I myself-thereof would-avenge gladly So you I-pray that you
 me soiés en aïue.» Et li baron et li haut homme li
to-me be in aid And the barons and the high men to-him
 respondirent que il li aideroient volentiers. Or savoient
answered that they him would-help gladly Now knew
 il bien chil de Jadres que chil de Venice les haoient. Si
they well those of Zara that those of Venice them hated So
 avoient pourcachié unes lettres de Rome, que trestout chil
they-had procured some letters from Rome that all those
 qui les werieroient ou qui leur feroient nul damage,
who them would-make-war-on or who to-them would-do any harm
 qu'il fussent eskemenié. Si envoierent ches letres par boins
that-they should-be excommunicated So they-sent these letters by good
 messages au duc et as pelerins qui illueques estoient
messengers to-the doge and to-the pilgrims who there were
 arivé. Quant li message vinrent a l'ost, si lut on les letres
arrived When the messengers came to the-host so read one the letters
 devant le duc et devant les pelerins. Quant les letres
before the doge and before the pilgrims When the letters
 furent lutes et li dux les eut entendues, il dist qu'il ne
were read and the doge them had heard he said that-he not
 lairoit mie pour l'eskemeniement l'apoistoile qu'il ne se
would-leave-off at-all for the-excommunication (of-)the-pope that-he — himself
 venjast de chiaux de le vile. A tant s'en alerent
should-avenge of those of the town With that themselves-thence went
 li message. Li dux parla autre fois as barons, si leur
the messengers The doge spoke other time to-the barons so to-them
 dist: «Seigneur, sachiés que je ne le lairoie a nul fuer
said Lords know that I not it would-leave-off at any price
 que je ne m'en venjaisse d'aus, ne pour l'apostoile!» Et
that I — myself-thereof should-avenge of-them nor for the-pope And

pria les barons qu'il li aidassent. Li baron respondirent
prayed the barons that-they him should-help The barons answered
 tout qu'il li aideroient volentiers, fors seulement li
all that-they him would-help gladly except only the
 cuens Symons de Monfort et mesires Engerrans de Bove.
count Simon of Montfort and my-lord Enguerrand of Boves
 Chil disent qu'il n'iroient mie contre le commandement
Those said that-they not-would-go at-all against the commandment
 l'apostoile, ne qu'il ne voloient mie estre eskemenié; si
(of-)the-pope nor that-they not wished at-all to-be excommunicated so
 s'atornerent, si alerent en Honguerie sejourner tot l'iver.

themselves-equipped so went into Hungary to-sojourn all the-winter
 Quant li dux vit que li baron li aideroient, si fist drechier
When the doge saw that the barons him would-help so had raised
 ses engiens a assalir a le vile, tant que chil de le vile
his engines to assail at the town so-far that those of the town
 virrent qu'il ne pooient avoir duree; si virrent a merchi,
saw that-they not could have endurance so came to mercy
 si leur rendirent le vile. Adont si y entrèrent li pelerin
so to-them surrendered the town Then so there entered the pilgrims
 et li Venicien, si parti on le vile en deus moitiés, si que
and the Venetians so divided one the town in two halves so that
 li pelerin en eurent l'une moitié et li Venicien l'autre.
the pilgrims thereof had the-one half and the Venetians the-other

- 15 Après si avint que une grans meslee leva entre les Veniciens
Afterward so happened that a great brawl rose between the Venetians
 et le menue gent des pelerins, qui dura bien une nuit et
and the small people of-the pilgrims which lasted well a night and
 demi jour. Et fu si grans chele meslee que a paines les
half day And was so great that brawl that with pains them
 peurent li chevalier desmeler. Quant il les eurent desmeslés,
could the knights separate When they them had separated

si y misent si bele pais que onques puis ne furent par mal
so there put so fair peace that ever since not were on ill
 ensanle. Après li haut homme croisié et li Venicien parlerent
together Afterward the high men crossed and the Venetians spoke
 ensanle de l'eskemeniement dont il furent eskemenié, de
together of the-excommunication whereby they were excommunicated for
 le vile qu'il avoient prise, tant qu'il se consellierent
the town that-they had taken so-far that-they themselves counseled
 entr'aus qu'il envoierent a Rome pour estre assous;
among-themselves that-they would-send to Rome for to-be absolved
 tant qu'il y envoierent le vesque de Sessions et mon
so-far that-they there sent the bishop of Soissons and my
 seigneur Robert de Bove pourcachierent lettres de l'apostoile
lord Robert of Boves they-procured letters from the-pope
 que tout li pelerin et tout li Venicien fussent assaus. Quant
that all the pilgrims and all the Venetians should-be absolved When
 il eurent leur letres, si s'en revint li vesques au
they had their letters so himself-thence came-back the bishop at-the
 plus tost qu'il peut; et mesires Robers de Bove ne revint
most soon that-he could and my-lord Robert of Boves not came-back
 mie avec lui, ains s'en ala outre mer droit de Rome.
at-all with him but himself-thence went beyond sea straight from Rome
 Entrementiers que li croisié et li Venicien sejournerent
Meanwhile that the crusaders and the Venetians sojourned
 illueques l'iver, si se pourpenserent qu'il avoient molt
there the-winter so themselves bethought that-they had much
 despendu; et parlerent ensanle et disent qu'il ne pooient
spent and spoke together and said that-they not could
 mie aler en Babyloine, ne en Alixandre, ne en Surie, car il
at-all go into Babylon nor into Alexandria nor into Syria for they
 n'avoient mie viandes ne avoir dont il y peussent aler, car
not-bad at-all victuals nor wealth whereby they there could go for

16

il avoient ja pres de tout despendu, que ens u sejourner
they had already near of all spent both in the sojourn
 qu'il avoient fait, que ens u grant loier qu'il avoient
that-they had made and in the great hire that-they had
 donné au navie. Et disent qu'il n'i pooient mie aler,
given to-the navy And said that-they not-there could at-all go
 et s'il y aloient, n'i feroient il nient, qu'il n'avoient
and if-they there went not-there would-do they anything for-they not-had
 ne viande ne avoir dont il se peussent soustenir.
neither victuals nor wealth whereby they themselves could sustain

The Young Alexius and the Emperor Manuel

VII

The doge proposes Greece, and the marquis tells of a youth at the German court, son of Kyrsac, whose brother took his empire. The generous Manuel, who loves the French, tests his Greeks in a feigned quarrel, and they flee. He weds his son to the French king's sister. Andronicus carries off Queen Theodora, returns after Manuel's death, murders the boy emperor and his mother, and hunts the house of Angel, until Kyrsac, poor and in hiding, cleaves the emperor's bailiff to the teeth.

- 17 Li dux de Venice vit bien que li pelerin n'estoient mie a
The doge of Venice saw well that the pilgrims not-were at-all at
 aise; si parla a aus et si leur dist: «Seigneur, en Grece
ease so he-spoke to them and so to-them said Lords in Greece
 a molt rike tere et molt plentive de tous biens; se nous
there-is very rich land and very plentiful of all goods if we
 poiemes avoir raisnavle acoison d'aler y et de prendre
could have reasonable occasion to-go there and to take
 viandes en le tere et autres coses, tant que nous fuissiemes
victuals in the land and other things so-far that we were

bien restoré, che me sanleroit boins consaus, et si porriemes
well restored this to-me would-seem good counsel and so we-could
 bien outre mer aler.» Adont se leva li marchis, si dist:
well beyond sea go Then himself rose the marquis so said
 «Seigneur, je fui antan au Noel en Alemaingne, a le
Lords I was last-year at-the Christmas in Germany at the
 court mon seigneur l'empereour. Illueques si vi un vaslet
court (of-)my lord the-emperor There so I-saw a youth
 qui estoit freres a le femme l'empereur d'Alemaingne. Chus
who was brother to the wife (of-)the-emperor of-Germany This
 vaslés si fu fix l'empereur Kyrac de Coustantinoble, que
youth so was son (of-)the-emperor Kyrac of Constantinoble whom
 uns siens freres li avoit tolu l'empire de Constantinoble
a his-own brother from-him had taken the-empire of Constantinoble
 par traïson. Qui chu vaslet porroit avoir,» fist li marchis, «il
by treason Who this youth could have said the marquis he
 porroit bien aler en le tere de Constantinoble et prendre
could well go into the land of Constantinoble and take
 viandes et autres choses, car li vaslés en est drois oirs.»
virtuals and other things for the youth thereof is rightful heir
 Or vous lairons chi ester des pelerins et de l'estoire, 18
Now you we-will-leave here be of-the pilgrims and of the-fleet
 si vous dirons de chu vaslet et de l'empereur Kyrac,
so to-you we-will-tell of this youth and of the-emperor Kyrac
 sen pere, comment il vinrent avant. Il eu un empereur en
his father how they came forward It had an emperor in
 Constantinoble, Manuaus eut a non. Si fu molt preudons
Constantinoble Manuel had as name So was very worthy-man
 chis empereres et li plus rikes de tous les crestiens qui
this emperor and the most rich of all the Christians who
 onques fuissent et li plus larges; ne onques nus ne li
ever were and the most generous nor ever anyone not of-him

demanda du sien, qui de le loi de Rome fust, qui a
asked of-the his who of the law of Rome was who to
 lui peust parler, qu'il ne li fesist donner cent mars:
him could speak that-be not to-him had given hundred marks
 ensi l'avons oï tesmoignier. Chis empereres amoit molt
thus it-we-have heard testified This emperor loved much
 Francois et mout les creoit. Un jour avint que le gent
French and much them trusted One day happened that the people
 de se tere et si consellier le blasmerent molt, et par
of his land and his counselors him blamed much and by
 maintes fois l'avoient blasmé, de chou qu'il estoit si larges
many times him-had blamed of this that-be was so generous
 et qu'il amoit si durement les Francois, et li empereres
and that-be loved so greatly the French and the emperor
 leur respondi: «Il ne sont que deus hommes qui doivent
to-them answered There not are but two men who ought
 donner: Damedieus et jou. Mais, se vous le loés, je douroie
give Lord-God and I But if you it advise I would-give
 congïe as Francois et a tous chiaus de le loi de Romme,
leave to-the French and to all those of the law of Rome
 qui entor mi et me poosté sont.» Et li Grieu en furent
who around me and my power are And the Greeks thereof were
 molt lié et disent: «Ha! sire, or feries vous molt bien et
very glad and said Ah lord now would-do you very well and
 nous vous servirons molt bien!» Et li empereres kemande
we you will-serve very well And the emperor commanded
 que tout li Francois s'en alaissent, et li Grieu en
that all the French themselves-thence should-go and the Greeks thereof
 furent si lié que trop. Li empereres manda après que
were so glad that exceedingly The emperor sent-word afterward that
 tout li Francois et li autre a qui il avoit donné congïe,
all the French and the others to whom he had given leave

qu'il venissent parler a lui priveement, et il si fissent. Et
that-they should-come to-speak to him privately and they so did And
quant il furent venu, si leur dist li empereres: «Seigneur,
when they were come so to-them said the emperor Lords
me gent ne me laissent en pais que je ne vous doingne
my people not me leave in peace that I not to-you give
nient et que je vous encache hors de me tere; mais or
anything and that I you drive out of my land but now
vous en alés tout ensanle et je vous siurrai entre mi
yourselves thence go all together and I you will-follow between me
et toute me gent, et si soiés en un lieu», qu'i leur
and all my people and so be in a place that-he to-them
nomma, «et je vous manderai par mes messages que vous
named and I to-you will-send-word by my messengers that you
vous en voisiés, et vous me manderés que vous ne
yourselves thence go and you to-me will-send-word that you not
vous en irés mie pour mi ne pour me gent, ains ferés
yourselves thence will-go at-all for me nor for my people but will-make
grant sanlant de mi corre sus: adont si verrai comment me
great show of me to-run upon then so I-will-see how my
gent se proveront.» Et il le fissent tot si; et quant il
people themselves will-prove And they it did all so and when they
s'en furent alé, li empereres manda se gent toute, si
themselves-thence were gone the emperor summoned his people all so
les sivi. Et quant il vint pres d'aus, il leur manda qu'il
them followed And when he came near of-them he to-them sent-word that-they
s'en alaissent esraument et qu'il widaissent se tere;
themselves-thence should-go forthwith and that-they should-quit his land
et chil qui avoient loé l'empereur qu'il les cachast hors
and those who had advised the-emperor that-he them should-drive out
de se tere furent molt lié, et disent a l'empereur: «Sire,
of his land were very glad and said to the-emperor Lord

s'il ne s'en veulent aler esraument, donnés nous
if-they not themselves-thence wish to-go forthwith give us
 congié que nous les ochions tous.» Li empereres respondi:
leave that we them may-kill all The emperor answered
 «Volentiers». Et quant li message a l'empereur vinrent as
Gladly And when the messengers of the-emperor came to-the
 Francois, il leur disent leur message mout orgelleusement
French they to-them said their message very proudly
 qu'il s'en alaissent tantost. Li Francois respondirent
that-they themselves-thence should-go at-once The French answered
 as messages, si leur disent qu'i ne s'en yroient
to-the messengers so to-them said that-they not themselves-thence would-go
 mie pour l'empereur ne pour se gent. Li message s'en
at-all for the-emperor nor for his people The messengers themselves-thence
 revinrent arriere et conterent chou que li Francois avoient
came-back back and recounted this that the French had
 respondu. Dont si kemanda li empereres a se gent qu'il
answered Then so commanded the emperor to his people that-they
 s'armaissent et qu'i li aidaissent a corre sus les
themselves-should-arm and that-they him should-help to run upon the
 Francois, et il s'armerent tout; si s'en alerent
French and they themselves-armed all so themselves-thence went
 vers les Francois. Et li Francois virrent encontre aus, si
toward the French And the French came against them so
 eurent molt bien leur batailles ordenees. Quant li empereres
had very well their battalions ordered When the emperor
 vit qu'il venoient vers lui et vers se gent pour combatre,
saw that-they were-coming toward him and toward his people for to-fight
 si dist a se gent: «Seigneur, or pensés du bien faire! Or
so said to his people Lords now think of-the well doing Now
 vous poés vous bien vengier d'aus.» Si comme il eut che
you can yourselves well avenge of-them So as he had this

dit, li Grieu eurent molt grant paour des Latins que il
said the Greeks had very great fear of-the Latins whom they
 virrent si aprochier d'aus (ore apele on tous chiaux de le loy
saw so approach of-them now calls one all those of the law
 de Romme Latins), et li Latin fisent grant sanlant d'aus
of Rome Latins and the Latins made great show of-them
 corre sus. Quant li Grieu virrent chou, si tornent en fuies,
to-run upon When the Greeks saw this so turn in flight
 si laissent l'empereur trestot seul. Quant li empereres vit
so leave the-emperor all alone When the emperor saw
 chou, si dist as Franchois: «Seigneur, or revenés arriere
this so said to-the French Lords now come-back back
 et je vous dourai plus que je ne fis onques mais.» Si en
and I to-you will-give more than I — did ever before So thence
 remena les Franchois; et quant il fu revenus, si manda
be-led-back the French and when he was returned so summoned
 se gent, si leur dist: «Seigneur, or puet on bien veir
his people so to-them said Lords now can one well see
 en cui on se doit fier; vous vous en fuistes quant
in whom one oneself ought trust you yourselves thence fled when
 vous me deustes aidier, si me laissastes tout seul, et, se
you me ought help so me left all alone and if
 li Latin vaussissent, il m'eussent tot decopé en pieches.
the Latins had-wished they me-would-have all cut-up in pieces
 Mais, or kemanch jou, que nus de vous ne soit si osés
But now command I that anyone of you not be so daring
 ne si hardis qu'il ja mais paraut de me largueche, ne
nor so bold that-be ever more should-speak of my generosity nor
 de chou que j'aim les Franchois, car je les aim et si me
of this that I-love the French for I them love and so myself
 fi plus en aus que en vous; et si leur donrai plus que
trust more in them than in you and so to-them will-give more than

jou ne leur ai donné.» Et li Grieu ne furent onques

I — to-them have given And the Greeks not were ever

puis si hardi qu'il en osaissent parler.

since so bold that-they thereof dared speak

19 Chis empereres Manuuaus avoit un molt bel fil de se

This emperor Manuel had a very fair son by his

femme, et se pourpensa qu'il le voloit marier au plus

wife and himself bethought that-he him wisbed to-marry at-the most

hautement qu'il porroit, et, par le conseil des Francois qui

highly that-he could and by the counsel of-the French who

entor lui estoient, si manda a Phelippom, le roi de Franche,

around him were so sent-word to Philip the king of France

qu'il li donnast se sereur avec sen fil. Si envia li

that-he to-him should-give his sister with his son So sent the

empereres ses messages en Franche, qui molt estoient haut

emperor his messengers into France who very were high

homme et molt y alerent rikement; ne onques ne vit on

men and very there went richly nor ever not saw one

gens plus rikement ne plus noblement aler que chil fisent, si

people more richly nor more nobly go than those did so

que li rois de France et se gent se merveillierent de le

that the king of France and his people themselves marveled of the

grant nobleche que li message menoient. Quant li message

great nobility that the messengers displayed When the messengers

vinrrent au roi, se li disent chou que li empereres li

came to-the king so to-him said this that the emperor to-him

mandoit. Et li rois dit qu'il s'en conseileroit; et

sent-word And the king says that-he himself-thereof would-counsel and

quant li rois se fu conseillies, si li loerent si baron qu'il

when the king himself was counseled so him advised his barons that-he

envoiaist se sereur a si haut homme et a si rike homme

should-send his sister to so high man and to so rich man

comme li empereres estoit. Dont si respondi li rois as
as the emperor was Then so answered the king to-the
 messages qu'il envoieiroit volentiers se sereur a l'empeur.
messengers that-he would-send gladly his sister to the-emperor
 Adont si atorna li rois mout rikement se sereur, si l'envoia 20
Then so equipped the king very richly his sister so her-sent
 avec les messages en Constantinoble et assés de se gent avec
with the messengers into Constantinoble and plenty of his people with
 lui, et chevauchierent tant et errerent qu'il ne cessèrent, si
her and they-rode so-long and journeyed that-they not ceased so
 vinrent en Coustantinoble. Quant il furent venu, si en fist
came into Constantinoble When they were come so thereof made
 li empereres molt grant feste de le damoisele et grant goie
the emperor very great feast of the damsel and great joy
 et de lui et de se gent. Entrementiers que li empereres eut
and of her and of her people Meanwhile that the emperor had
 envoié pour chele damoisele, si renvoia d'autre part outre mer
sent for that damsel so sent-in-turn on-other side beyond sea
 un sien parent qu'il molt amoit, Andromes avoit a non,
a his-own kinsman whom-he much loved Andronicus had as name
 pour le roine Teudore de Jherusalem, qui se suers estoit, qu'ele
for the queen Theodora of Jerusalem who his sister was that-she
 venist au courounement sen fil et a se feste. Le roine
should-come to-the coronation (of-)his son and to his feast The queen
 se mist en mer avec Androme a venir en Constantinoble.
herself put to sea with Andronicus to come into Constantinoble
 Quant il furent bien alé avant en le mer, si ne fait mais
When they were well gone forward on the sea so not does more
 el Andromes, si aama le roine, qui se cousine estoit, et jut
else Andronicus so loved the queen who his cousin was and lay
 a lui a forche. Et quant il eut che fait, si n'osa revenir
with her by force And when he had this done so not-dared return

arriere en Coustantinoble, ains prist le roine, si l'en mena
back into Constantinople but took the queen so her-thence led
 a force au Coine, as Sarrasins. Illueques si demoura.

by force to-the Iconium to-the Saracens There so remained

21 Quant li empereres Manuaus seut les nouveles que Andromes

When the emperor Manuel knew the news that Andronicus

eut si faitement le roine se seureur menee, si en fut
had in-such wise the queen his sister led-off so thereof was

molt dolens, et pour che ne lassa il mie qu'il ne fesist
very sorrowful and for this not left-off he at-all that-he — should-make
 grant feste et qu'il ne coronast sen fil et le damoisele;

great feast and that-he — should-crown his son and the damsel

ne demora mie graument après que li empereres morut.

not delayed at-all greatly after that the emperor died

Quant Andromes li traïtres oï dire que li empereres

When Andronicus the traitor heard tell that the emperor

Manuaus fu mors, si envoya a sen fil, qui empereres estoit,

Manuel was dead so sent to his son who emperor was

et se li fist requerre pour Dieu qu'il li pardonnast

and so to-him had requested for God that-he to-him should-pardon

sen mautalent, et si li fist acroire que che ne fu se

his ill-will and so to-him made believe that this not was except

menchoingne non que on li avoit mis sus, tant que li

lie not that one on-him had put upon so-far that the

empereres, qui enfes estoit, li pardonna sen mautalent,

emperor who child was to-him pardoned his ill-will

si li manda, tant que chis Andromes revint arriere, et

so to-him sent-word so-far that this Andronicus came-back back and

fu entor l'enfant, tant que li enfes le fist bailliu de tote

was around the-child so-far that the child him made bailiff of all

se terre, et qu'il fu orguellex que trop de le ballie

his land and that-he was proud that exceedingly of the bailiwick

qu'il avoit. Ne demora mie graument après qu'il prist par
that-be had Not delayed at-all greatly after that-be took by
 nuit l'empereur, si le mourdri et se mere aussi. Quant il
night the-emperor so him murdered and his mother also When he
 eut che fait, si prist deus grandesmes pierres, si leur fist
had this done so took two very-great stones so to-them had
 lier as cous et puis si les fist geter en le mer. Après
tied to-the necks and then so them had thrown into the sea Afterward
 si se fist coroner tot a force a empereur. Quant il fu
so himself had crowned all by force as emperor When he was
 coronés, si fait il prendre trestous chiaux que il seut que il
crowned so has he taken all those whom he knew that it
 en pesoit qu'il estoit empereres, si leur fait il crever les
thereof weighed that-be was emperor so of-them has he put-out the
 iex et destruire et de male mort morir. Et prenoit toutes
eyes and destroyed and of evil death die And he-took all
 les beles femmes que il trovoit, si gesoit a eles a forche;
the fair women that he found so lay with them by force
 et prist l'empereur a femme, qui estoit suers le roi de
and took the-empress to wife who was sister (of-)the king of
 Franche, et fist tant de si grans desloiautés, que onques
France and did so-many of so great disloyalties that ever
 nus traîtres ne nus mourdrissierres tant n'en fist comme
any traitor nor any murderer so-many not-thereof did as
 il fist. Quant il eut faites toutes ches desloiautés, après
he did When he had done all these disloyalties afterward
 si demanda a un sien maistre balliu, qui li aidait a faire
so asked of a his-own chief bailiff who him helped to do
 toutes ches malaventures, se il y avoit mais de chiaux
all these misdeeds if it there had more of those
 qu'il en pesast qu'il estoit empereres. Et chis li
whom-it thereof weighed that-be was emperor And this-one to-him

respondi qu'il n'en savoit mais nul, fors que on disoit
answered that-he not-thereof knew more anyone except that one said
 qu'il avoit trois joules vaslés en le vile, qui estoient d'un
that-it had three young youths in the town who were of-a
 lignage que on apeloit le lignage d'Angle, et estoient haut
lineage which one called the lineage of-Angel and were high
 homme, mais il n'estoient mie rike, ains estoient povre, ne
men but they not-were at-all rich but were poor nor
 n'estoient mie de grant pooir. Quant li empereres Andromes
not-were at-all of great power When the emperor Andronicus
 oï que si faitement estoient chil troi vaslet de chu
heard that in-such wise were those three youths of this
 lignage, si kemanda a chelui sen balliu, qui molt estoit
lineage so commanded to that his bailiff who very was
 malvais hons et traîtres ausi comme il estoit, qu'il les
wicked man and traitor just as he was that-he them
 alast prendre et qu'il les pendist ou qu'il les fesist
should-go to-take and that-he them should-hang or that-he them should-make
 de male mort morir. Li ballius s'en ala pour prendre
of evil death die The bailiff himself-thence went for to-take
 ches trois freres, mais il n'en prist que un et li doi
these three brothers but he not-thereof took but one and the two
 escaperent. Chelui qui fu pris, on li fist crever les iex;
escaped Him who was taken one of-him had put-out the eyes
 après il se rendi. Li doi autre s'en fuirent: si
afterward he himself cloistered The two others themselves-thence fled so
 s'en ala li uns en une tere que on apele Blakie, chis
himself-thence went the one into a land that one calls Wallachia this-one
 avoit non Kysrac; et li autres s'en ala en Anthioche,
had name Kysrac and the other himself-thence went into Antioch
 et fu pris des Sarrasins par une chevauchie que li crestien
and was taken by-the Saracens in a raid that the Christians

fisent. Chis qui en Blakie estoit fuis, si y fu si povres
made This-one who into Wallachia was fled so there was so poor
 qu'il ne se pooit warir, tant qu'il s'en revint arriere
that-be not himself could keep so-far that-be himself-thence came-back back
 en Constantinoble par fine povreté; si se mucha en le
into Constantinople by sheer poverty so himself bid in the
 maison a une veve dame en le vile. Or n'avoit il nul catel
house of a widowed lady in the town Now not-had he any chattel
 u siecle, fors une mule et un vaslet; si waaingnoit chus
in-the world except a mule and a youth so earned this
 vallés a se mule en vins qu'ele portoit, en autres coses,
youth with his mule in wines that-it carried in other things
 chou dont Kyrsaacs, ses sires, et il vivoient; tant que les
this whereof Kyrzac his lord and he lived so-far that the
 nouvelles a l'empereur vinrent Androme le traïteur, que chis
news to the-emperor came Andronicus the traitor that this-one
 estoit si faitement revenus en le vile. Adont si kemanda
was in-such wise returned into the town Then so commanded
 a sen balliu, qui molt estoit haïs de tote gent pour les
to his bailiff who very was hated by all people for the
 max qu'il faisoit cascun jour, qu'il alast prendre chelui
evils that-be did each day that-be should-go to-take that
 Kyrzac et qu'il le pendist; tant que chis monta un jour
Kyrzac and that-be him should-hang so-far that this-one mounted one day
 seur sen cheval et prist assés gent avec lui, si s'en ala
on his horse and took plenty people with him so himself-thence went
 a le maison le boine femme ou Kyrsaacs estoit. Quant
to the house (of-)the good woman where Kyrzac was When
 il vint la, si fist apeler a l'uis, et la boine femme vint
he came there so he-had call at the-door and the good woman came
 avant, si se mervella molt qu'il voloit, tant qu'i li
forward so herself marveled much what-be wished so-far that-be to-her

kemanda qu'ele fesist venir avant cheli qui estoit muchiés
commanded that-she should-make come forward him who was bidden

en se maison. Le boine femme respondi, si dist: «Ha! sire,
in her house The good woman answered so said Ab lord

pour Dieu merci! il n'a nul homme chaiens muchié.»
for God mercy it not-has any man in-here bidden

Et il kemanda autre fois qu'ele le fesist venir avant,

And he commanded other time that-she him should-make come forward
 ou s'ele nel faisoit venir, qu'i le feroit prendre l'un
or if-she not-him made come that-he her would-have taken the-one

et l'autre. Quant le boine femme oï chou, si eut grant
and the-other When the good woman heard this so had great
 peur de chu diable qui tant avoit fait de mal; si s'en

fear of this devil who so-much had done of evil so herself-thence
 entra en se maison, si vint au vaslet, se li dist:
entered into her house so came to-the youth so to-him said

«Ha! biau sire Kyrsac, vous estes mors: veschi le balliu

Ab fair lord Kyrsac you are dead behold-here the bailiff
 l'empereur et molt de gent avec li, qui vous sont venu
(of-)the-emperor and many of people with him who you are come

querre pour vous destruire et pour vous tuer!» Li vaslés fu
to-look for you to-destroy and for you to-kill The youth was

molt esmaris, quan il oï ches noveles, et tant qu'il vint
very dismayed when he heard these news and so-far that-he came

avant, qu'il ne se peut estordre a nul fuer qu'il n'alast
forward that-he not himself could escape at any price that-he should-go

hors a chu balliu. Si ne fait il mais el, si prent il s'espee,
out to this bailiff So not does he more else so takes he his-sword

si le met il sous sen surcot, se s'en ist il hors de le
so it puts he under his surcoat so himself-thence goes he out of the

maison, si vient il devant le balliu, se li dist: «Sire, que
house so comes he before the bailiff so to-him said Lord what

plaist vous?» Et chis li respondi molt fenelessement,
pleases you And this-one to-him answered very villainously
 se li dist: «Ribaus puans, on vous pendera ja!» Tant
so to-him said Ribald stinking one you will-hang presently So-far
 que Kyrsaacs vit qu'i li couvenoit aler avec aus maugré
that Kyrzac saw that-it him behooved to-go with them in-spite
 sien; et molt volontiers s'en venjast d'aucun d'aus;
of-himself and very gladly himself-thereof would-avenge of-some of-them
 se se trait il plus pres qu'il peust de chu balliu, si
so himself draws he more near that-he could of this bailiff so
 traist il s'espee, si fiert il chu balliu par mi le
drew he his-sword so strikes he this bailiff through the-midst (of-)the
 teste, si qu'il le pourfendi trestout dusques es dens.
head so that-he him cleft entirely as-far into-the teeth

The Fall of Andronicus

VIII

Kyrzac rides through the streets crying mercy to the altar of Saint Sophia, and the people make him emperor and force the patriarch to crown him. Andronicus's bowstring breaks as he aims at him, and he flees by sea while Kyrzac gives the people the palace treasure. A storm drives Andronicus back, and a taverner's wife finds him behind her casks. The people lead him naked on a camel through the town and tear him apart. Kyrzac then ransoms his brother from the Saracens.

Quant li serjant et le gent qui estoient avec le balliu 22
When the sergeants and the people who were with the bailiff
 virrent que li vaslés avoit si pourfendu le balliu, si
saw that the youth had so cleft the bailiff so
 s'en fuirent. Quant li vaslés vit qu'il s'en
themselves-thence fled When the youth saw that-they themselves-thence

fuioient, si prent il le cheval le balliu qu'il avoit ochis,
were-fleeing so takes he the horse (of-)the bailiff whom-he had killed
 si monte il sus, et tint s'espee qui tote ert sanente. Si
so mounts he upon and held his-sword which all was bloody So
 ne fait il mais el, si se met a le voie a aler vers
not does he more else so himself puts to the way to go toward
 le moustier Sainte Souphie. Si comme il s'en aloit,
the minster (of-)Saint Sophia So as he himself-thence went
 si crioit merchi as gens qui estoient aval les rues,
so cried mercy to-the people who were down-along the streets
 qui tot estoient esmari de le noise qu'il avoient oïe; si
who all were dismayed by the noise that-they had heard so
 leur disoit li vaslés: «Seignor, pour Dieu merchi, ne me
to-them said the youth Lords for God mercy not me
 tués mie, car je ai ochis le diable et le mordrisseur
kill at-all for I have killed the devil and the murderer
 qui toutes les hontes a faites a chiaus de cheste vile et
who all the shames has done to those of this town and
 as autres!» Quant il vint au moustier Sainte Souphie, si
to-the others When he came to-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia so
 monta seur l'autel et si embracha le crois, pour che qu'il
mounted on the-altar and so embraced the cross for this that-he
 voloit sauver se vie. Après li cris et le noise fu molt
wished to-save his life Afterward the cry and the noise was very
 grans en le vile; tant ala amont et aval li cris que on
great in the town so-far went up and down the cry that one
 le seut par toute le vile, comment Kyrsac eut chu maufé
it knew through all the town how Kyrsac had this fiend
 et chu mordrisseur ochis. Quant chil de le vile le seurent,
and this murderer killed When those of the town it knew
 si en furent molt lié, si keurent il qui miex miex
so thereof were very glad so run they who better better

au moustier Sainte Souphie, pour veir chu vaslet qui chu
to-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia for to-see this youth who this
 hardement avoit fait. Si comme il furent la tout asanlé,
boldness had done So as they were there all assembled
 si commenchièrent a dire l'uns a l'autre: «Chist est vaillans
so began to say the-one to the-other This-one is worthy
 et hardis, quant si grant hardement entreprist a faire.» Tant
and bold when so great boldness he-undertook to do So-far
 que li Griu disent entr'aus: «Faisons le bien! faisons de
that the Greeks said among-themselves Let-us-do it well let-us-make of
 chest vaslet empereur!» Tant qu'il s'i acorderent
this youth emperor So-far that-they themselves-thereto agreed
 tout entr'aus. Si envoient il pour le patriarche, qui a
all among-themselves So send they for the patriarch who at
 meesme d'iluec estoit en sen palais, qu'il venist coroner un
hand of-there was in his palace that-he should-come to-crown a
 nouvel empereur qu'il avoient eslut. Quant li patriarches
new emperor whom-they had elected When the patriarch
 oï chou, si dist qu'il n'en feroit nient et commencha
heard this so said that-he not-thereof would-do anything and began
 a dire: «Seigneur, mal le faites! Soiés en pais! Vous ne
to say Lords ill it you-do Be in peace You not
 faites mie bien qui avés tele cose entreprise. Se jou le
do at-all well who have such thing undertaken If I him
 coroune, li empereres Andromes me tueroit et decoperoit
crown the emperor Andronicus me would-kill and would-cut-up
 tout en pieches.» Et li Grieu li respondirent que s'il
all in pieces And the Greeks to-him answered that if-be
 ne le corounoit, qu'il li couperoiient le teste; tant que
not him crowned that-they of-him would-cut the head so-far that
 li patriarches, que par forche que par peur que il eut,
the patriarch both by force and by fear that he had

descendi de sen palais, si s'en vint au moustier,

came-down from his palace so himself-thence came to-the minster

la ou Kyr sacs estoit en molt povre robe et en molt

there where Kyr sac was in very poor robe and in very

povre vesteure, que le jour meesme avoit li empereres

poor clothing for the day same had the emperor

Andromes envoié sen balliu et ses gens pour lui prendre et

Andronicus sent his bailiff and his people for him to-take and

destruire; tant que li patriarkes se revesti, si le corona

destroy so-far that the patriarch himself vested so him crowned

lués esraument, vausist ou ne dengnast. Quant Kyr sacs fu

at-once forthwith willed-he or not deigned-he When Kyr sac was

coronés, si en alerent les nouveles tant amont et aval,

crowned so thence went the news so-far up and down

que Andromes le seut, et qu'il avoit sen balliu ochis, ne

that Andronicus it knew and that-he had his bailiff killed nor

ne le peut onques croire devant la que il y envoia ses

not it could ever believe before there that he there sent his

messages. Et quant si message vinrrent la, si virrent bien

messengers And when his messengers came there so saw well

que che fu voirs; si s'en revienent tantost arriere

that this was true so themselves-thence come-back at-once back

a l'empereur; si disent: «Sire, ch'est tout voirs.»

to the-emperor so say Lord this-is all true

23 Quant li empereres seut que che fu voirs, si se leva,

When the emperor knew that this was true so himself rose

si prist molt de se gent avec lui, si s'en ala dusques

so took many of his people with him so himself-thence went as-far

au moustier Sainte Souphie par uns alooirs qui alooient

to-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia by some galleries which went

de sen palais dusques au moustier. Quant il vint au

from his palace as-far to-the minster When he came to-the

moustier, si fist tant qu'il fu seur les vautes du moustier,
minster so did so-much that-he was on the vaults of-the minster
 si vit chelui qui estoit coronnés. Quant il le vit, si en fu
so saw him who was crowned When he him saw so thereof was
 molt dolens, et demanda a se gent s'il y avoit chelui qui
very sorrowful and asked of his people if-it there had one who
 eust nul arc, tant que on en aporta un et une saiete. Et
had any bow so-far that one thereof brought one and an arrow And
 Andromes prent chel arc, si entoise, si cuide ferir Kysrac,
Andronicus takes that bow so draws so thinks to-strike Kysrac
 qui coronnés estoit, par mi le cors. Si comme il
who crowned was through the-midst (of-)the body So as he
 entesa, si rumpi le corde, et il en fu molt esmaris et
drew so broke the string and he thereat was very dismayed and
 molt esperdus; si s'en revint arriere eu palais, tant
very distraught so himself-thence came-back back into-the palace so-far
 qu'il dist a se gent qu'il alaissent fremer les portes du
that-he said to his people that-they should-go to-shut the gates of-the
 palais, et qu'il s'armaissent et qu'il deffendissent le
palace and that-they themselves-should-arm and that-they should-defend the
 palais; et il si fisent. Et il s'en issi entrementiers
palace and they so did And he himself-thence went-out meanwhile
 du palais; si s'en vint a une fause posterne, si
from-the palace so himself-thence came to a false postern so
 s'en ist il de le vile, si s'en entra en une galie
himself-thence goes-out he of the town so himself-thence entered into a galley
 et de ses gens avec lui; si se mist en le mer, pour che
and of his people with him so himself put to the sea for this
 qu'il ne voloit mie que le gent de le vile le presissent.
that-he not wished at-all that the people of the town him should-take

24 Après le gent de le vile alerent u palais et menerent
Afterward the people of the town went into-the palace and led
 le nouvel empereur avec aus. Si prisent le palais a forche,
the new emperor with them So they-took the palace by force
 si y menerent l'empereur; après si l'assisent en la caiere
so there led the-emperor afterward so him-seated in the chair
 Coustentin, et puis qu'il fu assis en la caiere Coustentin,
(of-)Constantine and after that-be was seated in the chair (of-)Constantine
 si l'aourerent tot comme saint empereur. Li empereres fut
so him-adored all as holy emperor The emperor was
 molt liés de le grant houneur que Diex li avoit en tel
very glad of the great honor that God to-him had on such
 jour donnee; si dist as gens: «Seigneur, or veés le grant
day given so said to-the people Lords now see the great
 merveille de le grand hounour que Diex m'a donnée, que
marvel of the great honor that God to-me-has given that
 en chel jour meesme que on me devoit prendre et essillier,
on that day same that one me was-to take and ruin
 en chel jor meesme sui corrounés a empereur. Et pur le
on that day same am crowned as emperor And for the
 grant hounour que vous m'avés faite, vous dois jou trestot
great honor that you to-me-have done to-you give I all
 le tresor qui est en ches palais et u palais de Blakerne.»
the treasure which is in this palace and in-the palace of Blachernae
 Quant les gens oïrent chou, si en furent tout lié du
When the people heard this so thereof were all glad of-the
 grant don que li empereres leur eut donné; si alerent, si
great gift that the emperor to-them had given so they-went so
 esfondrerent le tresor, si y troverent tant d'or et d'argent
broke-open the treasure so there found so-much of-gold and of-silver
 comme une fine merveille, si le departirent entr'aus.
as a pure marvel so it divided among-themselves

Le nuit meesme que Andromes s'en fuioit leva une 25
The night same that Andronicus himself-thence was-fleeing rose a
 si grant tormente en le mer et une si grant tempeste que
so great storm on the sea and a so great tempest both
 de vent que de tounoirre que d'esclistre, que il ne se gent
of wind and of thunder and of-lightning that he nor his people
 ne seurent quel part il aloient; tant que li orages et
not knew what way they went so-far that the storm and
 le tormente les racacha arriere en Coustantinoble, qu'il
the tempest them drove-back back into Constantinople that-they
 n'en seurent mot. Quant il virrent qu'il furent a tere
not-thereof knew word When they saw that-they were at land
 et qu'il ne peurent avant aler, si dist Andromes a se
and that-they not could forward go so said Andronicus to his
 gent: «Seigneur, esgardés ou nous sommes.» Il esgarderent
people Lords look where we are They looked
 et virrent bien qu'il estoient revenu en Constantinoble,
and saw well that-they were returned into Constantinople
 tant qu'il disent a Andromes: «Sire, nous sommes mort,
so-far that-they said to Andronicus Lord we are dead
 car nous sommes revenu arriere en Coustantinoble.» Quant
for we are returned back into Constantinople When
 Andromes oï chou, si fu si esmaris qu'il ne seut que
Andronicus heard this so was so dismayed that-he not knew what
 faire; si dist a se gent: Seigneur, pour Dieu menés nous
to-do so said to his people Lords for God lead us
 ailleurs de chi!» Et il respondirent qu'il ne pooient
elsewhere from here And they answered that-they not could
 avant aler, qui leur couperoit les testes. Quant il
forward go though-one of-them would-cut the heads When they
 virrent qu'il ne peurent avant aler a nul fuer, si prisent
saw that-they not could forward go at any price so took

Andromes l'empereur, si l'en menerent en une taverne,
Andronicus the-emperor so him-thence led into a tavern
 si le muchierent derriere les touniaus. Li taverniers et se
so him hid behind the casks The taverner and his
 femme esgarderent molt chele gent, et si leur fu bien
wife looked-at much that people and so to-them was well
 avis que ch'estoit de le gent l'empereur Androme, tant
opinion that this-was of the people (of-)the-emperor Andronicus so-far
 que le femme au tavernier ala par aventure entor ses
that the wife of-the taverner went by chance around her
 touniaus veir qu'il fuissent bien seré, si esgarda amont et
casks to-see that-they were well closed so looked up and
 aval, si voit ele Androme seir derriere les touniaus a tous
down so sees she Andronicus sit behind the casks in all
 ses dras emperiaus, si le reconnut mout bien. Si s'en
his robes imperial so him recognized very well So herself-thence
 revint ele arriere a sen baron, si li dist ele: «Sire,
came-back she back to her husband so to-him said she Lord
 Andromes li empereres est muchiés chaiens.» Quant li
Andronicus the emperor is hidden in-here When the
 taverniers l'oï, si envia un message pour un haut homme
taverner it-heard so sent a messenger for a high man
 qui manoit pres d'iluec en un grand palais, cui pere a
who dwelt near of-there in a great palace whose father of
 chelui Andromes avoit destruit, et si avoit jut a forche a
that-one Andronicus had destroyed and so had lain by force with
 le femme chu haut homme. Quant li messages vint la, si
the wife (of-)this high man When the messenger came there so
 dist a chu haut homme que Andromes estoit a le maison
said to this high man that Andronicus was at the house
 chu tavernier, si le nomma. Quant li haus hons oï que
(of-)this taverner so him named When the high man heard that

Andromes estoit a le maison chu tavernier, si en fu
Andronicus was at the house (of-)this taverner so thereof was
 molt liés; si prent il de se gent avec lui, si va a le maison
very glad so takes he of his people with him so goes to the house
 au tavernier, si prent il Androme, si l'en maine il en
of-the taverner so takes he Andronicus so him-thence leads he into
 sen palais. Quant che vint l'endemain par matin, si prist
his palace When this came the-next-day in morning so took
 li haus hons Androme, si l'en maine il u palais
the high man Andronicus so him-thence leads he into-the palace
 devant l'empereur Kyrzac. Quant Kyrsaacs le vit, si li
before the-emperor Kyrzac When Kyrzac him saw so of-him
 demanda: «Andromes, pour coi as tu si faitement traï
asked Andronicus for what hast thou in-such wise betrayed
 ten seigneur l'empereur Manuel, et pour coi mordrisis tu
thy lord the-emperor Manuel and for what murderedst thou
 se femme et sen fil, et pour coi as tu si volentiers fait
his wife and his son and for what hast thou so gladly done
 mal a chiaux que il en pesoit que tu estoies empereres,
evil to those whom it thereof weighed that thou wast emperor
 et pour coi me voloies tu faire prendre?» Et Andromes
and for what me wishest thou to-have taken And Andronicus
 li respondi: «Taissiés vous», fist il, «que je ne vous
to-him answered Be-silent you said he for I not to-you
 en dengneroie respondre!» Quant li empereres Kyrzacs oï
thereof would-deign to-answer When the emperor Kyrzac heard
 qu'il ne l'en dengneroit respondre, si fist mander molt
that-he not him-thereof would-deign to-answer so had summoned many
 de chiaux de le vile qu'il venissent devant lui. Quant il
of those of the town that-they should-come before him When they
 furent devant li venu, si leur dist li empereres: «Seigneur,
were before him come so to-them said the emperor Lords

veschi Androme, qui tant a fait de maus et a vous et
behold-here Andronicus who so-much has done of evils both to you and
 as autres. Je ne porroie mie, che me sanle, faire justiche
to-the others I not could at-all this to-me seems do justice
 de lui a le volonté de vous tous, mais je le vous baille a
of him at the will of you all but I him to-you deliver to
 faire ent chou que vous vaurrés.» Adont si en furent chil
do thereof this that you will-wish Then so thereof were those
 de le vile molt lié; si le prisent, tant que li un disent que
of the town very glad so him took so-far that the ones said that
 on l'arsist, li autre que on le boulist en une caudiere
one him-should-burn the others that one him should-boil in a cauldron
 pour plus vivre longement et pener, li autre que on le
for more to-live long and suffer the others that one him
 trainast, tant qu'il ne se peurent acorder entr'aus de
should-drag so-far that-they not themselves could agree among-themselves of
 quel mort ne quel tormente il le peussent destruire, tant
what death nor what torment they him could destroy so-far
 qu'il y eut un sage homme qui dist: «Seigneur, se vous
that-it there had a wise man who said Lords if you
 me voliés croire, je vous enseingneroie comment nous nous
me wished to-believe I you would-teach how we ourselves
 porriemes trop bien vengier de lui. Je ai un camoel
could exceedingly well avenge of him I have a camel
 en maison, qui est le plus orde beste et le plus foireuse
in house which is the most foul beast and the most befouled
 et le plus laide du siecle. Nous prenderons Andromes, si
and the most ugly of-the world We will-take Andronicus so
 le despoullerons trestout nu, si le loierons au dos du
him will-strip all naked so him will-tie to-the back of-the
 camoel si que ses visages li iert droit ens u cul; si le
camel so that his face to-him will-be right in the ass so him

mesrons d'un kief de le vile dusques a l'autre. Si se
will-lead from-one end of the town as-far to the-other So themselves
 porront adonques bien vengier tot chil et toutes cheles a
will-be-able then well avenge all those and all those to
 qui il a mesfait.» Si s'acorderent tout a chou que chis
whom he has wronged So themselves-agreed all to this that this-one
 eut dit; si prenent il Androme, si le loient il si comme
had said so take they Andronicus so him tie they so as
 chil eut devisé. Si comme il menoient contreval le vile,
that-one had proposed So as they led down-through the town
 si venoient chil a qui il avoit meffait, si le debrocoient et
so came those to whom he had wronged so him pricked and
 depicoient et feroient, li un de coutiaus, li autre d'alesnes,
tore-apart and struck the ones with knives the others with-awls
 li tiers d'espees, et disoient: «Vous pendistes men pere,
the third with-swords and said You hanged my father
 et si geustes a me femme a forche!» Et les femmes qui
and so lay with my wife by force And the women whose
 filles il avoit prises a forche, le saccoient par les grenons,
daughters he had taken by force him pulled by the mustaches
 et fisent li tant de le pure honte que, quant il virrent
and did to-him so-much of the pure shame that when they came
 a l'autre kief de le vile, n'avoit il mie de char seur le
to the-other end of the town not-had he at-all of flesh on the
 cors de lui; et puis prisent les os, si les geterent en une
body of him and then they-took the bones so them threw into a
 longaingne. En tele maniere se vengierent il de chel
cesspit In such manner themselves avenged they of that
 traïteur. Tres che jour que Kyrsaacs fu empereres, pourtraist
traitor From this day that Kyrsac was emperor portrayed
 on sus les portaus des moustiers comment Kyrsaac avoit
one upon the portals of-the minsters how Kyrsac had

esté empereres par miracle, et comment Nostre Sires li
been emperor by miracle and how Our Lord to-him
 metoit le corone u chief d'une part, et Nostre Dame
put the crown on-the head on-one side and Our Lady
 d'autre, et comment li angles coupa le corde de l'arc
on-other and how the angel cut the string of the-bow
 dont Andromes le vaut ferir, pour chou che disoient
with-which Andronicus him wished to-strike for this so they-said
 que ses lignages avoit sornon d'Angle.
that his lineage had surname of-Angel

- 26 Après si li prist molt grans talens de veir sen frere qui
Afterward so to-him took very great desire to see his brother who
 en païsnie estoit en prison, tant qu'il prist messages, si
in heathendom was in prison so-far that-he took messengers so
 les envoia querre sen frere. Tant le quisent que on leur
them sent to-see his brother So-long him they-sought that one to-them
 fist entendre qu'il estoit en prison: il alerent chele part.
made understand that-he was in prison they went that way
 Quant il vinrent la, si le demanderent as Sarrasins,
When they came there so him asked of-the Saracens
 et li Sarrasin avoient oï dire que li vaslés estoit freres
and the Saracens had heard tell that the youth was brother
 l'empereur de Constantinoble, si l'en tinrent molt plus
(of-)the-emperor of Constantinoble so him-thereby held much more
 kier, et disent qu'il n'en renderoient mie sans grant
dear and said that-they not-thence would-render at-all without great
 avoir; tant que li message leur donnerent tant d'or et
wealth so-far that the messengers to-them gave so-much of-gold and
 d'argent comme il demanderent. Quant il eurent chelui
of-silver as they asked When they had him
 racaté, si s'en revinrent arriere en Coustantinoble.
ransomed so themselves-thence came-back back into Constantinoble

Alexius the Usurper

IX

Kyrsac makes his brother Alexius bailiff of all his land, and Alexius grows proud. He seizes the emperor while he hunts, puts out his eyes, imprisons him in secret, and has himself crowned, saying his brother is dead. The tutor of Kyrsac's son sends the boy to Germany, to his sister, the wife of the emperor there, and the story returns to the crusaders, who will send for the youth on the marquis's counsel.

Quand li empereres Kyrsaacs vit sen frere, si en fu molt liés 27

When the emperor Kyrsac saw his brother so thereof was very glad

et molt en fist grant feste, et chis refu aussi molt liés

and much thereof made great feast and this-one was-in-turn also very glad

de chou que ses freres fu empereres, et de chou qu'il avoit

of this that his brother was emperor and of this that-he had

conquis l'empire par se forche. Chus vaslés avoit non Alexes.

conquered the-empire by his force This youth had name Alexius

Ne demora waires après que li empereres ses freres le fist

Not delayed much after that the emperor his brother him made

bailliu de toute se terre et kemandeur. Adont si s'enorgueilli

bailiff of all his land and commander Then so himself-grew-proud

si de chele baillie qu'il eut, que les gens de tout l'empire le

so of that bailiwick that-he had that the people of all the-empire him

renommoient trop et redoutoient pour chou qu'il estoit

acclaimed exceedingly and feared for this that-he was

freres l'empereur et pour chou que li empereres l'amoit tant.

brother (of-)the-emperor and for this that the emperor him-loved so-much

Aprés si avint un jour que li empereres ala cachier en se 28

Afterward so happened one day that the emperor went to-hunt in his

forest; si ne fait mais el Alexes ses freres, si vient il en le

forest so not does more else Alexius his brother so comes he into the

forest ou li empereres estoit, si le prent il par traïson, si
forest where the emperor was so him takes he by treason so
 li creva les iex. Après, quant il eut che fait, si le fist
of-him put-out the eyes Afterward when he had this done so him had
 metre en prison, que on n'en seut mot. Quant il eut che
put in prison so-that one not-thereof knew word When he had this
 fait, si s'en revint arriere en Coustantinoble, si fist
done so himself-thence came-back back into Constantinople so made
 acroire que li empereres ses freres estoit mors, si se fist
believe that the emperor his brother was dead so himself had
 courouner a empereeur a forche. Quant li maistres au fil
crowned as emperor by force When the master of-the son
 l'empereeur Kyr sac vit que li oncles a l'enfant eut traï sen
(of-)the-emperor Kyr sac saw that the uncle of the-child had betrayed his
 pere, et qu'il s'estoit fais empereres par traïson, si ne fait
father and that-he himself-was made emperor by treason so not does
 mais el, si prent il l'enfant, si le fait mener en Alemaingne
more else so takes he the-child so him has led into Germany
 a se sereur, qui estoit femme l'empereeur d'Alemaingne, car
to his sister who was wife (of-)the-emperor of-Germany for
 il ne voloit mie que ses oncles ne le fesist destruire,
he not wished at-all that his uncle — him should-have destroyed
 et estoit plus drois oirs que Alexes ses oncles n'estoit.

and he-was more rightful heir than Alexius his uncle was

- 29 Or avés oï comment Kyr sac vint avant et comment il fu
Now you-have heard how Kyr sac came forward and how he was
 empereres et comment ses fix ala en Alemaingne, pour qui
emperor and how his son went into Germany for whom
 li croisié et li Venicien envoierent par le conseil du marchis
the crusaders and the Venetians sent by the counsel of-the marquies
 de Monferras, leur maistre, si comme vous avés oï en l'estoire
of Montferrat their master so as you have heard in the-history

devant, pour che qu'il eussent acoison d'aler en le tere de
before for this that-they should-have occasion to-go into the land of
 Coustantinoble. Or vous dirons de chel enfant et des croisiés,
Constantinople Now to-you we-will-tell of that child and of-the crusaders
 et comment li croisié envoierent pour lui, et comment il
and how the crusaders sent for him and how they
 alerent en Coustantinoble, et comment il le conquisent.
went into Constantinople and how they it conquered

The Envoys and the Young Alexius

X

Two knights go to Germany, and the emperor there advises the youth to go, since he will never have his heritage without the crusaders. The fleet has already left Zara for Corfu, leaving two galleys to wait for him, and he is welcomed there with great feasting. In the marquis's tent he promises two hundred thousand marks, the fleet's keep for a year, his own service beyond the sea, ten thousand men there for the rest of his life, and a year's victuals for all who go.

Quant li marchis eut dit as pelerins et as Veniciens que 30
When the marquis had said to-the pilgrims and to-the Venetians that
 qui aroit chel enfant dont nous avons parlei par devant,
who would-have that child of-whom we have spoken just before
 il aroit boine acoison d'aler en Coustantinoble et d'aus
he would-have good occasion to-go into Constantinople and to-themselves
 estoier, si fisent li croisié atirer deus chevaliers molt bien
provision so had the crusaders equipped two knights very well
 et molt belement, si les envoierent en Alemaigne pour chu
and very handsomely so them sent into Germany for this
 vaslet, qu'il venist a aus, et se li manderent qu'il li
youth that-he should-come to them and so to-him sent-word that-they him

aideroient sen droit a conquerre. Quant li message vinrent
would-help his right to conquer When the messengers came
 a le court l'empereur d'Alemaingne, la ou li vaslés estoit,
to the court (of-)the-emperor of-Germany there where the youth was

se li disent le message que on leur avoit carquié a dire.
so to-him said the message that one to-them had charged to say

Quant li vaslés oï chou et entendî le mandement que li
When the youth heard this and understood the summons that the
 haut homme croisié li avoient mandé, si en fu molt liés

high men crossed to-him had sent so thereof was very glad
 et molt en fist grant feste, et molt fist biau sanlant as
and much thereof made great feast and much made fair countenance to-the

messages; si dist qu'il s'en conseileroit a l'empereur sen
messengers so said that-he himself-thereof would-counsel with the-emperor his

serouge. Quant li empereres l'entendî, si respondi au vaslet
brother-in-law When the emperor it-heard so answered to-the youth

que bele caanche li estoit avenue; si li loa bien qu'il
that fair chance to-him was come so him advised well that-he

y alast, et se li dist qu'il n'aroit jamais point de
there should-go and so to-him said that-he not-would-have ever a-whit of

sen hyretage, sen par l'aiue de Dieu et des croisiés ne l'avoit.
his heritage if by the-aid of God and of-the crusaders not it-had

31 Li vaslés entendî bien que li empereres li donnoit

The youth understood well that the emperor to-him gave

boin conseil; si s'atorna au plus belement qu'il peut,

good counsel so himself-equipped at-the most handsomely that-he could

si s'en vint avec les messages; et devant che que li

so himself-thence came with the messengers and before this that the

vaslés ne li message fussent venu a Jadres, si s'en fu

youth or the messengers were come to Zara so itself-thence was

li estores alés en l'isle de Corfaut pour chou que le Paske

the fleet gone to the-isle of Corfu for this that the Easter

estoit ja *was already* passee. Mais quant li estores mut a aler i, *But when the fleet moved to go there*
 si fist on laiier deus galies pour atendre les messages et *so had one left two galleys for to-await the messengers and*
 le vaslet. Et sejournerent li pelerin en l'isle de Corfaut, tant *the youth And sojourned the pilgrims on the-isle of Corfu so-far*
 que li vaslés et li message vinrent. Quant li vaslés et li *that the youth and the messengers came When the youth and the*
 message vinrent a Jadres, si trouverent ches deus galies que *messengers came to Zara so found these two galleys that*
 on leur avoit laiies; si se misent en mer, si s'en *one for-them had left so themselves put to sea so themselves-thence*
 alerent tant qu'il vinrent a Corfaut, la ou li estores *went so-far that-they came to Corfu there where the fleet*
 estoit. Quant li homme virrent que li vaslés venoit, si *was When the men saw that the youth was-coming so*
 alerent tout encontre lui, si le saluerent et se li fisent *went all to-meet him so him greeted and so to-him made*
 molt grant feste. Quant li vaslés vit que li haut homme *very great feast When the youth saw that the high men*
 l'ouneroient si, et tous li estores qui lueques estoit, si fu *him-honored so and all the fleet which there was so was*
 si liés que nus hons si ne fu. Adont si vint li marchis *so glad that any man so not was Then so came the marquis*
 avant, si prist le vaslet, si l'en mena avec lui en se tente. *forward so took the youth so him-thence led with him into his tent*
 Quant li vaslés fu la, adont si s'asanlerent tout li *When the youth was there then so themselves-assembled all the*
 haut baron et li dux de Venice a le tente le *high barons and the doge of Venice at the tent (of-)the*
 marchis, et parlerent d'un es coses et d'autres, et tant *marquis and spoke of-some things and of-others and so-far*

que il li demanderent que il feroit pour aus, s'il le
that they of-him asked what he would-do for them if-they him
 faisoient empereur et s'il li faisoient corone porter en
made emperor and if-they to-him made crown bear in
 Coustantinoble; et il leur respondi qu'il feroit quanque il
Constantinople and he to-them answered that-he would-do whatever they
 vaurroient. Tant parlerent que il dist qu'il donroit a l'ost
would-wish So-long they-spoke that he said that-he would-give to the-host
 .cc. mile mars, et qu'il tenroit le navie un an a
two-hundred thousand marks and that-he would-keep the navy one year at
 sen coust, et qu'il iroit outre mer avec aus a tout sen
his cost and that-he would-go beyond sea with them with all his
 pooir, et qu'i tenroit tous les jours de sa vie .x.m.
power and that-he would-keep all the days of his life ten-thousand
 hommes a armes en le tere d'outre mer a sen coust, et
men at arms in the land of-beyond sea at his cost and
 qu'il douroit a tous chiaus de l'ost qui se departiroient
that-he would-give to all those of the-host who themselves would-depart
 de Coustantinoble a aler outre mer viande dusques a un an.
from Constantinople to go beyond sea victuals as-far to one year

Conrad of Montferrat

XI

The doge proposes Constantinople, some want Babylon, and the marquis presses hardest, to avenge an old wrong. Robert tells it: his brother Conrad saved the emperor from the rebel Branas, killing him with the first blow, then fled a plot to Tyre. There he shut out King Guy, whom the queen had chosen, and broke Saladin's siege by a Genoese ruse. He later married the next queen and was killed by the Assassins. The bishops rule the expedition no sin.

Adont furent trestout li baron de l'ost mandei et li 33
Then were all the barons of the-host summoned and the
Venicien, et quant il furent tot assanlé, si se leva li
Venetians and when they were all assembled so himself rose the
dux de Venice, si parla a aus: «Seigneur» fist li dux, «or
doge of Venice so spoke to them Lords said the doge now
avons nous raisnauvle acoison d'aler en Coustantinoble, se
have we reasonable occasion to-go into Constantinople if
vous le loés; car nous avons le droit oir.» Or y eut
you it advise for we have the rightful heir Now there had
il aucuns qui ne s'acorderent mie a aler en Coustantinoble,
it some who not themselves-agreed at-all to go into Constantinople
ains disoient: «Ba! que ferons nous en Coustantinoble? Nous
but said Bah what will-do we in Constantinople We
avons no pelerinage a faire et ausi pourposement d'aler en
have our pilgrimage to make and also purpose to-go into
Babyloine ou en Alexandre, et no navies ne nous doit sivir
Babylon or into Alexandria and our navy not us ought follow
que un an et ja est la moitiés de l'anee passee!» Et li
but one year and already is the half of the-year passed And the
autre disoient encontre: «Que ferons nous en Babyloine ne
others said against What will-do we in Babylon or

en Alixandre, quant nous n'avons viande ne avoir par coi
in Alexandria when we not-have victuals nor wealth by which
 nous y puissons aler? Miex nous vient il, anchois que
we there may go Better to-us comes it before that
 nous y aillons, que nous conquestons viande et avoir par
we there go that we may-win victuals and wealth by
 raisnavle acoison, que nous y aillons pour morir de fain.
reasonable occasion than we there go for to-die of hunger
 Adont si porrons forfaire, et il nous offre a venir avec
Then so we-will-be-able do-harm and he to-us offers to come with
 nous et a tenir no navie et nostre estore encore un an
us and to keep our navy and our fleet yet one year
 a sen coust!» Et li marchis de Monferras y metoit plus
at his cost And the marquis of Montferrat therein put more
 paine que nus qui y fust d'aler en Coustantinoble, pour
pains than anyone who there was to-go into Constantinople for
 che qu'il se voloit vengier d'un mesfait que li empereres
this that-he himself wished to-avenge of-a wrong that the emperor
 de Coustantinoble, qui l'empire tenoit, li avoit fait. Or
of Constantinople who the-empire held to-him had done Now
 vous lairons ichi ester de l'estore; si vous dirons le
you we-will-leave here be of the-fleet so to-you we-will-tell the
 mesfait dont li marchis haoit l'empeur de Coustantinoble.
wrong for-which the marquis hated the-emperor of Constantinople
 Il avint que li marchis Caurras, ses freres, fu croisiés et
It happened that the marquis Conrad his brother was crossed and
 qu'il ala outre mer, et mena deus galies, et s'en ala
that-he went beyond sea and led two galleys and himself-thence went
 par Coustantinoble. Et quant il vint en Constantinoble, si
by Constantinople And when he came into Constantinople so
 parla a l'empeur, et li empereres le bienviengna et le
spoke to the-emperor and the emperor him welcomed and him

salua. Or avoit en chu point uns haus hons de le chité
greeted Now had at this point a high man of the city
 assis l'empereur en Constantinoble, si que li empereres
besieged the-emperor in Constantinople so that the emperor
 n'en n'osoit issir. Quant li marchis vit chou, si demanda
not-thence not-dared go-out When the marquis saw this so asked
 comment ch'estoit que chil l'avoit si faitement assis,
how this-was that that-one him-had in-such wise besieged
 ne ne s'osoit il mie combatre a lui; et li empereres
nor not himself-dared be at-all to-fight with him and the emperor
 respondi qu'il n'avoit mie bien le cueur de ses gens ne
answered that-he not-had at-all well the heart of his people nor
 l'aiwe; pour che si ne se voloit mie combatre a lui.
the-aid for this so not himself wished at-all to-fight with him
 Quant li marchis oï chou, si dist qu'il l'en aideroit,
When the marquis heard this so said that-he him-therein would-help
 s'il voloit; et li empereres dist que che voloit il et qu'il
if-he wished and the emperor said that this wished he and that-he
 l'en saroit molt boin gré. Adont dist li marchis a
him-thereof would-know very good gratitude Then said the marquis to
 l'empereur, qu'il fesist mander tous chiaus de le loy de
the-emperor that-he should-have summoned all those of the law of
 Rome, tous les Latins de le vile, si les aroit avec lui
Rome all the Latins of the town so them he-would-have with him
 en se compaignie, et qu'il se combateroit a aus, et
in his company and that-he himself would-fight with them and
 qu'il feroit l'avant warde; et li empereres presist toute
that-he would-make the-van guard and the emperor should-take all
 se gent avec lui, si le siurroit après. Si fist li empereres
his people with him so him would-follow after So had the emperor
 mander tous les Latins de le vile. Quant il furent tot
summoned all the Latins of the town When they were all

venu, si kemanda li empereres qu'il s'armassent tout,
come so commanded the emperor that-they themselves-should-arm all
 et quant il furent tout armé et li marchis eut faite toute
and when they were all armed and the marquis had had all
 se gent armer, si prit tous ches Latins avec lui, si ordena
his people armed so took all these Latins with him so ordered
 le miex qu'il peut se bataille; et li empereres fu ausi tous
the best that-he could his battalion and the emperor was also all
 armés et se gent avec lui. Si ne fait mais el li marchis,
armed and his people with him So not does more else the marquis
 si se met il a le voie par devant, et li empereres le
so himself puts he to the way in front and the emperor him
 sivi après. Si comme li marchis fu hors des portes a
followed after So as the marquis was out of-the gates with
 toute se bataille, et li empereres va, se li fait il fremer
all his battalion and the emperor goes so on-him has he shut
 le porte après. Si comme li Vernas, qui l'empereur avoit
the gate after So as the Branas who the-emperor had
 assis, vit que li marchis venoit durement pour combatre
besieged saw that the marquis was-coming hard for to-fight
 a lui, si s'esmuet il, et il et se gent, a venir encontre
with him so sets-out he both he and his people to come against
 le marchis. Si comme il venoient, si ne fait mais el li
the marquis So as they were-coming so not does more else the
 Vernas, si se fiert il des esperons, si se met il devant
Branas so himself strikes he with-the spurs so himself puts he before
 toute se gent bien le getee d'un cailleu, pour soi haster
all his people well the cast of-a pebble for himself to-hasten
 et pour ferir soi en le bataille le marchis. Quant li
and for to-strike himself into the battalion (of-)the marquis When the
 marchis le vit venir, si point il encontre lui, si le fiert
marquis him saw come so spurs he against him so him strikes

il au premerain coup en l'uel, si l'abat il mort de chu
he at-the first blow in the-eye so him-fells he dead with this
 caup; si fiert a destre et a senestre, et il et se gent,
blow so strikes to right and to left and he and his people
 si en ochient mout. Quant chil virrent que leur sires
so of-them kill many When those saw that their lord
 fu mors, si se commencent a desconfire, si tornent
was dead so themselves begin to break so turn
 il en fuies. Quant li empereres li traîtres, qui avoit fait
they in flight When the emperor the traitor who had had
 les portes fremer après le marchis, vit que il fuoient, se
the gates sbut after the marquis saw that they fled so
 ist il hors de le chité a toute se gent, si akieut il
goes-out he out of the city with all his people so sets he
 a cachier chiaux qui fuoient; si y waaignierent molt, et
to chase those who fled so there gained much both
 li marchis et autre, et chevax et autres coses assés. Ensi
the marquis and others both horses and other things plenty Thus
 faitement venja li marchis l'empereur de cheli qu'il l'avoit
wise avenged the marquis the-emperor of him who him-had
 assis. Quant il les eurent desconfis, si s'en revinrent
besieged When they them had routed so themselves-thence came-back
 arriere en Constantinoble et li empereres et li marchis.
back into Constantinople both the emperor and the marquis
 Quant il furent revenu et il se furent desarmé, si
When they were returned and they themselves were disarmed so
 merchia molt durement li empereres le marchis de chou
thanked very greatly the emperor the marquis of this
 qu'il l'avoit si bien vengié de chu sien anemi, tant que
that-he him-had so well avenged of this his-own enemy so-far that
 li marchis li demanda pour coi il avoit fait les portes
the marquis of-him asked for what he had had the gates

fremer après lui: «Ba! ensi est ore!» fist li empereres. «Or,
shut after him Bah thus is now said the emperor Now
 de par Dieu!» fist li marchis. Et ne demora waires après
on behalf-of God said the marquis And not delayed much after
 que li empereres et si traïteur pourparlerent une grant
that the emperor and his traitors plotted a great
 traïson, que il voloit faire le marchis destruire; tant que
treason that he wished have the marquis destroyed so-far that
 uns hons d'aage qui le seut, si en eut pitié du marchis,
a man of-age who it knew so thereof had pity of-the marquis
 si vint avant au marchis tot belement, se li dist: «Sire,
so came forward to-the marquis all quietly so to-him said Lord
 pour Dieu, alés vous ent de cheste vile, car se vous
for God go yourself thence from this town for if you
 y demourés tier jour, li empereres et si traïteur ont
there stay the-third day the emperor and his traitors have
 pourpallee une grant traïson qu'i vous prendront, si vous
plotted a great treason that-they you will-take so you
 feront destruire.» Quant li marchis oï ches nouveles, si
will-have destroyed When the marquis heard these news so
 ne fu mie a aise. Si vient il le nuit meesme, si fait il
not was at-all at ease So comes he the night same so has he
 atorner ses galies, si se met il en mer, anchois qu'il fust
equipped his galleys so himself puts he to sea before that-it were
 jours, si s'en va il; ainc ne cessa, si vint a Sur. Or
day so himself-thence goes he ever not ceased so came to Tyre Now
 i estoit avenu, par devant chou que le tere fust perdue,
there was happened just before this that the land was lost
 que li rois de Jherusalem fu mors, que li roiaumes de
that the king of Jerusalem was dead that the kingdom of
 Jherusalem estoit tous perdus et que il n'i avoit mais
Jerusalem was all lost and that it not-there had more

vile qui se tenist, fors Sur et Escaloun. Si avoit li rois
town which itself held except Tyre and Ascalon So had the king
 qui mors fu deus sereurs mariees: si avoit uns chevaliers,
who dead was two sisters married so had a knight
 mesire Guis de Luisegnun en Poitau, l'ainsnee a cui li
my-lord Guy of Lusignan in Poitou the-elder to whom the
 roiaimes estoit eskeus, et mesires Hainfrois de Tournon avoit
kingdom was fallen and my-lord Humphrey of Toron had
 le mainsnee. Si s'asanlerent un jor tout li haut baron
the younger So themselves-assembled one day all the high barons
 de le tere et li cuens de Tripe et li Temples et li
of the land and the count of Tripoli and the Temple and the
 Hospitax en Jherusalem, au Temple, et disent entr'aus
Hospital in Jerusalem at-the Temple and said among-themselves
 qu'il departesissent monseigneur Guion de se femme, pour
that-they should-part my-lord Guy from his wife for
 chou que li roiaimes estoit eskeus a se femme, et qu'il
this that the kingdom was fallen to his wife and that-they
 li donnaissent autre baron qui fust plus soufisans a estre
to-her should-give other husband who were more fit to be
 rois que mesire Guis n'estoit, et il si fisent. Il les
king than my-lord Guy was and they so did They them
 departirent, et quant on les eut departis, si ne se
parted and when one them had parted so not themselves
 peurent onques acorder a qui il le mariaissent, tant qu'il
could ever agree to whom they her should-marry so-far that-they
 se misent seur le roine du tout, qui avoit esté femme
themselves put upon the queen of-the all who had been wife
 monseigneur Guion. Se li ballierent le corone, et ele le
(of-)my-lord Guy So to-her they-delivered the crown and she it
 donnast a cui que ele vausist qui rois fust. Tant qu'il
should-give to whom that she would-wish who king should-be So-far that-they

se rasanlerent un autre jor tout li baron et li Temples
themselves reassembled one other day all the barons and the Temple
 et li Hospitaus, et se y fu li cuens de Tripe, qui estoit
and the Hospital and so there was the count of Tripoli who was
 li mieudres chevaliers du roiaume, qui cuidoit que le dame
the best knight of-the kingdom who thought that the lady
 li donnast le corone, et si i fu mesires Guis, qui avoit
to-him would-give the crown and so there was my-lord Guy who had
 eu le roine a femme. Quant il se furent tout assanlé,
had the queen to wife When they themselves were all assembled
 et le dame tint le corone, si esgarda amont et aval; si i
and the lady held the crown so looked up and down so there
 voit ele chelui qui avoit esté ses barons, si va ele avant,
sees she him who had been her husband so goes she forward
 se li met ele u chief. Ensi si fu mesires Guis rois.
so on-him puts she on-the head Thus so was my-lord Guy king
 Quant li cuens de Tripe vit chou, si en fu si dolens
When the count of Tripoli saw this so thereof was so sorrowful
 qu'il s'en ala en sen país, a Tripe, par mautalent.
that-he himself-thence went into his country to Tripoli in anger

34 Après ne demora mie, si se combati as Sarrasins,
Afterward not delayed at-all so himself fought with-the Saracens
 si fu pris et se gent tote desconfite, et li tere fu si
so was taken and his people all routed and the land was so
 perdue qu'il n'i avoit mais vile qui se tenist, fors Sur
lost that-it not-there had more town which itself held except Tyre
 et Escaloune. Quant Salehadins vit qu'il eut si le tere en
and Ascalon When Saladin saw that-he had so the land in
 se main, si vint au roi de Jherusalem, que il avoit en se
his hand so came to-the king of Jerusalem whom he had in his
 prison, se li dist que s'il li faisoit rendre Escaloune,
prison so to-him said that if-he to-him had rendered Ascalon

qu'i le lairoit aler et grant partie de se gent avec li. Et
that-be him would-let go and great part of his people with him And
 li rois li respondi: «Or m'i menés dont», fist il, «et je
the king to-him answered Now me-there lead then said he and I
 le vous ferai rendre!» Et Salehadins l'i mena. Quant il
it to-you will-have rendered And Saladin him-there led When they
 vinrent la, si parla li rois a chiaus de le vile, si leur dist
came there so spoke the king to those of the town so to-them said
 qu'il rendissent le vile, qu'i le voloit ensi. Et chil alerent,
that-they should-render the town for-be it wished thus And those went
 si li rendirent le vile. Quant Salehadins eut le vile en se
so to-him rendered the town When Saladin had the town in his
 main, si laissa le rois aler et une partie de se gent avec lui;
hand so let the king go and a part of his people with him
 et li rois, quant il fu escapés de prison, a tout tant
and the king when he was escaped from prison with all as-much
 de gent comme il eut, si s'en vint a Sur. Et entre
of people as he had so himself-thence came to Tyre And between
 ches entrefaites que li rois avoit ouvré, si avoit li marchis
these doings that the king had wrought so had the marquis
 tous chiaus de Sur et Genevois qui i estoient et uns et
all those of Tyre and Genoese who there were both ones and
 autres tous a sen acort, et il li avoient tot juré feeuté
others all to his accord and they to-him had all sworn fealty
 et seur sains qu'il se tenroient du tot a lui comme
and on relics that-they themselves would-hold of-the all to him as
 a leur seigneur, et il leur aidast le vile a desfendre. Et li
to their lord and he them should-help the town to defend And the
 marchis avoit trouvé si grant kierté en le vile que on vendoit
marquis had found so great dearth in the town that one sold
 le mesure de blé de le vile .c. besans, qui ne fesist mie
the measure of wheat of the town hundred bezants which not made at-all

plus que sestier et demi a Amiens. Quant li rois vint a
more than setier and half at Amiens When the king came to
 Sur, si commenchièrent a hukier si serjant: «Ouvrés, ouvrés
Tyre so began to shout his sergeants Open open
 le porte! Veschi le roi ou il vient.» Et chil de dedens
the gate Behold-here the king where he comes And those of within
 respondirent qu'il n'i enterroient, tant que li marchis
answered that-they not-there would-enter so-far that the marquis
 vint as murs, si dist qu'il n'i enterroit: «Ba! comment?»
came to-the walls so said that-he not-there would-enter Bah how
 fist le rois, «de ne sui jou sires et rois de laiens? — En
said the king what not am I lord and king of in-there In
 non Dieu», fist li marchis, «ne sires ne rois ne n'estes vous,
name (of-)God said the marquis neither lord nor king nor not-are you
 ne vous n'i enterrés, car vous avés tot houni et le terre
nor you not-there will-enter for you have all shamed and the land
 toute perdue, et d'autre part le kiertés est si grands chaiens,
all lost and on-other side the dearth is so great in-here
 que si vous et vo gent i entriés, que le vile seroit tote
that if you and your people there entered that the town would-be all
 perdue de fain. Et jou ai plus kier», fist li marchis, «que
lost of hunger And I have more dear said the marquis that
 vous soiés perdus, et vous et vo gent de qui il n'est
you be lost both you and your people of whom it not-is
 waires grans espois, que nous qui chaiens sommes ne le
much great matter than we who in-here are nor the
 vile.» Quant li rois vit qu'il n'i peut entrer, si s'en
town When the king saw that-he not-there could enter so himself-thence
 torna a toute se gent, si s'en ala vers Acre en un
turned with all his people so himself-thence went toward Acre on a
 toron; la si se loja. Et fu illueques tant que li rois de
hillock there so himself lodged And was there so-far that the king of

Franche et li rois d'Engleterre l'i trouverent. Si comme

France and the king of-England him-there found So as

li marchis estoit a Sur, en chele grant kierté qui i estoit,

the marquis was at Tyre in that great dearth which there was

si leur envoia Diex confort que uns markaans i vint, qui

so to-them sent God comfort for a merchant there came who

amena une nave de blé: si commist le blé a .x. besans qui

brought a ship of wheat so set the wheat at ten bezants which

estoit a .c. Si en fu molt liés li marchis et tout chil

was at hundred So thereof was very glad the marquis and all those

de le vile, et si fu tous li bles retenus et acatés en le vile.

of the town and so was all the wheat kept and bought in the town

Ne demora waires après, si vient Salehadins, si assiet il Sur 35

Not delayed much afterward so comes Saladin so besieges he Tyre

et par tere et par mer, si que ne viande ne autre cose

both by land and by sea so that neither victuals nor other thing

ne pooit venir en le vile, et tant i sist que le kiertés fu

not could come into the town and so-long there sat that the dearth was

de rekief ausi grande en le vile comme ele i avoit esté.

of anew as great in the town as it there had been

Quant li marchis vit que le kiertés fu si grans en le vile, 36

When the marquis saw that the dearth was so great in the town

et qu'il ne pooient avoir soulas ne confort de nule part, si

and that-they not could have solace nor comfort from any side so

manda tous chiaus de le vile et Genevois qu'il i avoit et

summoned all those of the town and Genoese that-it there had both

uns et autres, si parla a aus et si leur dist: «Seigneur»,

ones and others so spoke to them and so to-them said Lords

fist il, «nous sommes maubailli, se Diex n'en a merchi,

said he we are ill-treated if God not-thereof has mercy

que le kiertés est si grans en cheste vile que il n'i a

for the dearth is so great in this town that it not-there has

waires viande ne blé dont nous nous puissions longement
much victuals nor wheat whereby we ourselves may long
 soustenir, ne nus confors ne puet venir ne par mer ne par
sustain nor any comfort not can come neither by sea nor by
 terre. Pour Dieu, s'il y a nul de vous qui y sache
land For God if-it there has anyone of you who therein knows-how-to
 metre conseil, se li meche!» Tant que uns Genevois sali
put counsel so it let-him-put So-far that a Genoese leapt
 avant, si dist: «Se vous me voliés croire,» fist il, «je vous
forward so said If you me wished to-believe said be I to-you
 dourroie boin conseil. — Ore quel?» fist le marchis. — «Jel
would-give good counsel Now what said the marquis I-it
 vous dirai», fist chis; «nous avons chaiens en ceste vile nes
to-you will-tell said this-one we have in-here in this town ships
 et galies et barges et autres vaissiax, si vous dirai que je
and galleys and barges and other vessels so to-you I-will-tell what I
 ferai. Je prendrai quatre galies avec mi, si les ferai armer
will-do I will-take four galleys with me so them will-have armed
 de le plus aidant gent que nous arons; si me meterai ains
with the most able people that we will-have so myself will-put before
 jour en mer, ausi com je m'en vausisse fuir. Et si tost
day to sea just as I myself-thence wished to-flee And so soon
 comme li Sarrasin m'apercheveront si n'aront loisir d'aus
as the Saracens me-will-perceive so not-will-have leisure of-them
 armer, ains aront si grant haste de moi ataindre et de moi
to-arm but will-have so great haste to me overtake and to me
 cachier qu'il ne s'armeront nient; ains destendront trestout
chase that-they not themselves-will-arm at-all but will-dash all
 après mi, et vous arés trestous vos autres waissiaus et
after me and you will-have all your other vessels and
 barges et galies molt bien fait warnir de le plus aidant gent
barges and galleys very well had furnished with the most able people

que vous arés, et quant vous vesrés que eles seront toutes

that you will-have and when you will-see that they will-be all

destendues après mi, et eles seront bien lanchies avant,

dashed-off after me and they will-be well launched forward

adont si bescochiés trestous vos vaissiaus et destendés après,

then so loose all your vessels and dash after

et je retornerai arriere; si nous combaterons a aus. Ensi si

and I will-turn back so we will-fight with them Thus so

nous envoiera Diex conseil, se li plaist!» A chest conseil si

to-us will-send God counsel if him pleases To this counsel so

s'acorderent tout, si fisent tot ensi comme chis eut devisé.

themselves-agreed all so did all thus as this-one had proposed

Quant che vint vers le jour, et chis eut ses quatre galies 37

When this came toward the day and this-one had his four galleys

molt bien atornees et molt bien armees, et tot li autre

very well equipped and very well armed and all the other

vaissel furent ensement molt bien armé, si ne fait mais el,

vessels were likewise very well armed so not does more else

si se met il en le mer un peu ains le jour. Or estoit li

so himself puts he to the sea a little before the day Now was the

pors de le mer dedens les murs de le vile de Sur, ou par

port of the sea within the walls of the town of Tyre where through

ent les nes issoient et entroient en le vile; si se met il

it the ships went-out and came-in into the town so himself puts he

a le voie, si s'en commenche a aler grandesme aleure.

to the way so himself-thence begins to go very-great pace

Quant il fu un peu loins et li Sarrasin l'aperchoivent, si

When he was a little far and the Saracens him-perceive so

eurent tel haste de chelui sivre que onques ne s'i

had such haste of him to-follow that ever not themselves-there

armerent, si laissent il aler trestoutes leur chent galies, si

armed so let they go all their hundred galleys so

acuellent a cachier chelui. Quant eles furent bien lanchies
set to chase him When they were well launched
 avant, et chil de le vile destendent après, et chil qui
forward and those of the town dash after and that-one whom
 li Sarrasin cachoient retorne; si acuellent chil Surien ches
the Saracens chased turns so set-upon those Syrians these
 Sarrasins qui tot estoient desarmé, si en ochient molt et
Saracens who all were unarmed so of-them kill many and
 si les desconfisent, si que onques de toutes les chent galies
so them rout so that ever of all the hundred galleys
 n'en escapa que deus que li Surien ne presissent toutes.

not-thereof escaped but two that the Syrians not took all
 Et Salehadins eswardoit tot chou et faisoit si grant duel que
And Saladin watched all this and made so great grief that
 trop, et tiroit se barbe et deschiroit ses caveax de duel,
exceedingly and pulled his beard and tore his hair for grief
 qu'il veoit se gent decauper devant lui, ne ne leur pooit
that-he saw his people cut-down before him nor not them could
 aidier. Quant il eut si sen navie perdu, si se desloja, si
help When he had so his navy lost so himself decamped so
 s'en ala. Ensi faitement fu le vile retenue par le marchis,

himself-thence went Thus wise was the town kept by the marquis
 et li rois Guis estoit en chel toronchel vers Acre, la ou
and the king Guy was on that billock toward Acre there where
 li rois de France et li rois d'Engleterre l'avoient trouvé.
the king of France and the king of-England him-had found

38 Après ne demora mie waires que li rois Guis fu mors, et
Afterward not delayed at-all much that the king Guy was dead and
 se femme ausi. Si escaÿ li roiaumes a la femme monseigneur
his wife also So fell the kingdom to the wife (of-)my-lord
 Hainfroi du Toron, qui estoit suers le roine. Si va on, si
Humphrey of-the Toron who was sister (of-)the queen So goes one so

taut on a monseigneur Hainfroï se femme, si le donna on
takes-away one from my-lord Humphrey his wife so her gave one
 au marchis. Ensi si fu li marchis rois, puis en eut il une
to-the marquis Thus so was the marquis king then thereof had he a
 fille, et puis fu li marchis ochis de Haussassis, puis si prist
daughter and then was the marquis killed by Assassins then so took
 on le roine, si le donna on au conte Henri de Champagne.
one the queen so her gave one to-the count Henry of Champagne
 Et puis après si assist on Acre et si le prist on.
And then afterward so besieged one Acre and so it took one
 Or vous avons conté le mesfait dont li marchis de Monferras 39
Now to-you have recounted the wrong for-which the marquis of Montferrat
 haioit l'empereur de Coustantinoble, et pour coi il i metoit
hated the-emperor of Constantinople and for what he therein put
 gregneur paine et gregneur conseil d'aler en Coustantinoble
greater pains and greater counsel to-go into Constantinople
 que tout li autre, si revenrons après a no matere de
than all the others so we-will-come-back afterward to our matter of
 devant. Quant li dux de Venice eut dit as barons que or
before When the doge of Venice had said to-the barons that now
 avoient il boine acoison d'aler en le tere de Coustantinoble
had they good occasion to-go into the land of Constantinople
 et que il le loioit bien, adont se s'i acorderent trestot
and that he it advised well then so themselves-thereto agreed all
 li baron. Après si fist on demander as vesques se che
the barons Afterward so had one asked of-the bishops if this
 seroit pechiés d'aler i, et li vesque respondirent et disent
would-be sin to-go there and the bishops answered and said
 que che n'estoit mie pechiés, ains estoit grans aumosnes,
that this not-was at-all sin but was great almsgiving
 car puis qu'il avoient le droit oir qui deserités estoit, bien
for since that-they had the rightful heir who disinherited was well

li pooient aidier a sen droit conquerre et de ses enemis
 him could help to his right conquer and of his enemies
 vengier. Adont si fisent le vaslet jurer seur sains que il leur
 avenge Then so they-had the youth swear on relics that he to-them
 tenroit ches convenenches qu'il leur avoit dit par devant.
 would-keep these covenants that-he to-them had said just before

Into the Straits

XII

The fleet sails to the Mouth of Abydos, where Troy stood, and up the Arm of Saint George to a league from Constantinople, and city and fleet gaze at each other in wonder before the host lands at Chalcedon. The emperor offers gold and silver, and the barons answer that he holds the empire wrongfully. Ten galleys row the youth along the walls, but the people say they do not know him, and the host arms, confesses, and embarks to a hundred pairs of trumpets.

40 Adont si s'acorderent tout li pelerin et li Venicien que on
 Then so themselves-agreed all the pilgrims and the Venetians that one
 i alast; adont si atirerent leur estoire et leur oirre, si
 there should-go then so they-arranged their fleet and their journey so
 se misent en mer. Tant alerent qu'il vinrent a un port
 themselves put to sea So-far they-went that-they came to a port
 que on apele Bouke d'Ave, qui estoit bien chent liwes en
 that one calls Mouth of-Abydos which was well hundred leagues away
 sus de Coustantinoble. Or estoit chis pors la ou Troies
 off from Constantinople Now was this port there where Troy
 le grant sist, a l'entree du bras Saint Jorge. De la
 the great sat at the-entrance of-the arm (of-)Saint George From there
 si se resmurent, et singlerent tant contremont le bras
 so themselves set-out-again and sailed so-far up the arm

Saint Jorge que il vinrent a une liwe de Coustantinoble.

(of-)Saint George that they came to a league from Constantinople

Adont si s'entratendirent tant que tout li vaissel furent venu

Then so each-other-awaited so-far that all the vessels were come

tot ensanle. Quant tous li estores et tout li vaissel furent

all together When all the fleet and all the vessels were

tout ensanle, si achesmerent et atornerent leur vaissiaus si

all together so adorned and equipped their vessels so

belement que ch'estoit le plus bele cose du monde a eswarder.

handsomely that this-was the most fair thing of-the world to behold

Quant chil de Constantinoble virrent chel estoire qui si estoit

When those of Constantinople saw that fleet which so was

belement appareilliés, si l'eswarderent a merveille, et estoient

handsomely arrayed so it-beheld for wonder and were

monté seur les murs et seur les maisons pour eswarder chele

mounted on the walls and on the houses for to-behold that

merveille; et chil de l'estore si eswarderent le grandeur de le

marvel and those of the-fleet so beheld the greatness of the

vile qui si estoit longue et lee, si s'en remerveillierent

town which so was long and wide so themselves-thereat marveled-in-turn

molt durement. Adont si s'en passerent outre et

very greatly Then so themselves-thence passed beyond and

prisent port a Mauchidone, outre le brach Saint Jorge.

took port at Chalcedon beyond the arm (of-)Saint George

Quant li empereres de Coustentinoble le seut, si leur

When the emperor of Constantinople it knew so to-them

manda par boins messages que il estoient la quis et

sent-word by good messengers what they were there seeking and

pour coi il estoient la venu, et si leur manda que s'il

for what they were there come and so to-them sent-word that if-they

volioient de sen or et de sen argent, qu'il leur enverroit

wished of his gold and of his silver that-he to-them would-send

molt volentiers. Quant li haut oïrent chou, si respondirent
very gladly When the high-(ones) heard this so answered
 as messages qu'il n'en voloient nient de sen or ne de
to-the messengers that-they not-thereof wished anything of his gold nor of
 sen argent, ains voloient que li empereres se demesist de
his silver but wished that the emperor himself should-divest of
 l'empire, car il nel tenoit mie a droit ne loiaument; et se
the-empire for he not-it held at-all by right nor loyally and so
 li manderent qu'il avoient le droit oir avec aus, Alexe,
to-him sent-word that-they had the rightful heir with them Alexius
 le fil Kyrsaac l'empeur. Adont li message respondirent
the son (of-)Kyrzac the-emperor Then the messengers answered
 et disent que li empereres n'en feroit nient; a tant
and said that the emperor not-thereof would-do anything with that
 si s'en alerent. Après li dux de Venice parla as
so themselves-thence went Afterward the doge of Venice spoke to-the
 barons et si leur dist: «Seigneur, je loieroie bien que
barons and so to-them said Lords I would-advise well that
 on presist dis galies et que on mesist le vaslet en une
one should-take ten galleys and that one should-put the youth in one
 et gens avec lui, et qu'il alaissent par trives au rivage
and people with him and that-they should-go under truce to-the shore
 de Coustantinoble, et qu'il demandaissent a chiaus de le
of Constantinople and that-they should-ask of those of the
 chité s'il vausissent le vaslet reconnoistre a seigneur.» Et
city if-they would-wish the youth to-acknowledge as lord And
 li haut homme respondirent que che ne seroit se bien
the high men answered that this not would-be except good
 non. Si atirerent ches dis galies et le vaslet et assés gent
not So they-arranged these ten galleys and the youth and plenty people
 armee avec lui; si nagierent dusques pres des murs de le
armed with him so rowed as-far near of-the walls of the

vile, si nagierent amont et aval, et moustroient as gens
town so rowed up and down and showed to-the people
 le vaslet, Alexes avoit a non, si leur demandoient si le
the youth Alexius had as name so of-them asked if him
 reconnoissoient a seigneur; et chil de le vile respondirent
they-acknowledged as lord and those of the town answered
 et disent bien qu'il nel reconnoissoient mie a seigneur,
and said well that-they not-him acknowledged at-all as lord
 et qu'il ne savoient qui il estoit; et chil qu'il estoient
and that-they not knew who he was and those who were
 es galies avec lui, le vaslet, disoient que ch'estoit le
in-the galleys with him the youth said that this-was the
 fix Kyrsac l'empereur qui fu, et chil dedens respondirent
son (of-)Kyrsac the-emperor who was and those within answered
 autre fois qu'il n'en savoient nient. Adont si s'en
other time that-they not-thereof knew anything Then so themselves-thence
 revinrent il arriere a l'ost, et fist savoir que on leur
came-back they back to the-host and made known what one to-them
 avoit respondu. Adont quemanda on par toute l'ost qu'i
had answered Then commanded one through all the-host that-they
 s'armaissent tout, et grant et petit, et quant il furent
themselves-should-arm all both great and small and when they were
 tout armé, si se confesserent tout et quemenierent,
all armed so themselves confessed all and communed
 car il doutoient molt a ariver par devers Coustantinoble.
for they feared much to land over toward Constantinople
 Après si ordenerent leur batailles et leur nes et leur
Afterward so they-ordered their battalions and their ships and their
 uissiers et les galies, et entrèrent li chevalier es
horse-transport and the galleys and entered the knights into-the
 uissiers avec leur chevax et se misent a le voie;
horse-transport with their horses and themselves put to the way

si fisent sonner buisines d'argent et d'arain bien dusques
 so had sounded trumpets of-silver and of-brass well as-far
 a chent paire, et tabours et tymbres tant que trop.
 to hundred pair and drums and timbrels so-many that exceedingly

The Tower of Galata

XIII

The Greeks line the shore but flee before the landing, and the knights ride out of the horse-transport over their bridges and chase them to a gate. The tower of Galata, which holds the great chain across the port, is taken, and the fleet enters. The French cross a bridge and camp before Blachernae, and the doge builds bridges on his ships' yards. On the morning of the assault the emperor Alexius comes out with seventeen battalions and surrounds the French, who are afraid and can form only seven.

- 42 Quant le gent de le vile virrent chel grant navie et chel grant
 When the people of the town saw that great navy and that great
 estore et il oïrent les sons des buisines et des tabors qui
 fleet and they heard the sounds of-the trumpets and of-the drums which
 faisoient grant noise, si s'armerent trestout et monterent seur
 made great noise so themselves-armed all and mounted on
 les maisons et seur les tors de le vile. Si leur fu bien avis
 the houses and on the towers of the town So to-them was well opinion
 que toute le mers et le tere tranlast, et que toute le mers fust
 that all the sea and the land trembled and that all the sea were
 couverte de nes; et entrementiers avoit li empereres fait venir
 covered with ships and meanwhile had the emperor had come
 se gent tote armee seur le rivage, pour desfendre le rivage.
 his people all armed on the shore for to-defend the shore

Quant li croisié et li Venicien virrent les Grius qui estoient 43

When the crusaders and the Venetians saw the Greeks who were
 venu seur le rivage tout armé encontre'aus, si parlerent
come on the shore all armed against-them so spoke
 ensanle tant que li dux de Venice dist qu'il iroit devant
together so-far that the doge of Venice said that-he would-go ahead
 a toute se gent et qu'il prenderoit le rivage a l'aiwe de
with all his people and that-he would-take the shore with the-aid of
 Dieu. Adont si prist ses nes et ses galies et ses uissiers,
God Then so took his sbips and his galleys and his horse-transport
 se se mist u front de l'ost par devant; après si
so himself put in-the front of the-host in front afterward so
 prisent leur arbalestiers et leur arkiers, si les misent par
they-took their crossbowmen and their archers so them put in
 devant en barges pour delivrer le rivage des Grius. Quant
front in barges for to-clear the shore of-the Greeks When
 il se furent si faitement ordené, si alerent vers le
they themselves were in-such wise ordered so went toward the
 rivage. Quant li Griu virrent que li pelerin ne lairoient
shore When the Greeks saw that the pilgrims not would-leave-off
 mie pour peur d'aus qu'il ne venissent au rivage, et il
at-all for fear of-them that-they — should-come to-the shore and they
 les virrent aprochier d'aus, si se traient arriere, onques
them saw approach of-them so themselves drew back ever
 ne les oserent atendre, tant que li estores arriva, et quant
not them dared await so-far that the fleet arrived and when
 il furent arrivé, si issirent li chevalier hors des uissiers
they were arrived so went-out the knights out of-the horse-transport
 tot monté; que li uissier estoient en tele maniere fait
all mounted for the horse-transport were in such manner made
 que il i avoit wis que on ouvroit bien, si lanchoit on
that it there had door that one opened well so launched one

un pont hors, par ou li chevalier pooient issir hors a
a bridge out by where the knights could go-out out to
 tere tot monté. Quant li estoires fu arivés, et li Griu, qui
land all mounted When the fleet was arrived and the Greeks who
 s'estoient trait arriere, virent que il furent tot issu hors,
themselves-were drawn back saw that they were all gone out
 si en furent molt dolent. Or estoient che une gent, chil
so thereof were very sorrowful Now were these a people those
 Griu qui estoient venu au rivage desfendre, qui s'estoient
Greeks who were come to-the shore to-defend who themselves-were
 vanté a l'empereur que ja n'i arriveroient li pelerin
boasted to the-emperor that ever not-there would-land the pilgrims
 tant comme il i fussent. Quant li chevalier furent issu
so-long as they there were When the knights were gone
 hors des uissiers, si aquellent a cachier ches Grius, si les
out of-the horse-transport so set to chase these Greeks so them
 cachierent dusques a un pont qui pres estoit du kief de
chased as-far to a bridge which near was of-the end of
 le chité; de seur chu pont avoit une porte ou par ent
the city from upon this bridge there-had a gate where through it
 li Griu passerent et s'en fuirent en Constantinoble.
the Greeks passed and themselves-thence fled into Constantinople
 Quant il furent revenu de cachier ches Grius, si parlerent
When they were returned from chasing these Greeks so spoke
 ensanle, tant que li Venicien disent que leur vaissel n'estoient
together so-far that the Venetians said that their vessels not-were
 mie a seur, s'il n'estoient en port; si prisent conseil qu'il
at-all in safety if-they not-were in port so they-took counsel that-they
 les meteroient en port. Or estoit li pors de Constantinoble
them would-put in port Now was the port of Constantinople
 molt bien fremés d'une molt grosse caaine de fer, qui
very well closed with-a very great chain of iron which

tenoit en le chité et d'autre part du port tenoit a le
held in the city and on-other side of-the port held to the
 tour de Galatha. Ichele tours estoit molt fors et molt bien
tower of Galata That tower was very strong and very well
 desfensavle et molt bien warnie de gent desfensavle.

defensible and very well furnished with people able-to-defend

Par le conseil des haus hommes fu chele tours assise, et 44

By the counsel of-the high men was that tower besieged and
 tant que ele fu prise par forche, et de kief en kief de
so-far that it was taken by force and from end to end of

la caaine avoit galies de Grijois qui aidoint le caaine
the chain there-had galleys of Greeks which helped the chain

a deffendre. Et quant le tors fu prise et le caaine fu
to defend And when the tower was taken and the chain was

route, si entrèrent li waissel dedens le port et furent
broken so entered the vessels within the port and were

mis assauveté, et prisent des galies as Grius qui estoient
put in-safety and they-took some galleys of-the Greeks which were

dedens le port et des nes. Et quant lés nes et tot
within the port and some ships And when the ships and all

li autre vaissel furent mis dedens le port a sauveté, si
the other vessels were put within the port in safety so

sanlerent tout li pelerin et li Venicien, si prisent conseil
assembled all the pilgrims and the Venetians so took counsel

entr'aus comment il aserroient le vile, et tant qu'il
among-themselves how they would-besiege the town and so-far that-they

s'acorderent entr'aus que li Franchois l'asseroient par
themselves-agreed among-themselves that the French it-would-besiege by

tere et li Venicien par mer; et dist li dus de Venice qu'il
land and the Venetians by sea and said the doge of Venice that-he

feroit faire engiens en ses nes et eskieles, par coi on
would-have made engines in his ships and ladders by which one

assauroit as murs. Adont s'armerent li chevalier et tout
would-assail at-the walls Then themselves-armed the knights and all
 li autre pelerin; si alerent passer a un pont qui estoit pres
the other pilgrims so went to-cross at a bridge which was near
 que de sit a deus liwes, ne n'avoit passage a aler en
upon as far as two leagues nor not-there-had passage to go into
 Constantinoble a mains de quatre liwes d'illuec fors a chu
Constantinople at less than four leagues from-there except at this
 pont. Et quand il vinrent au pont, li Griu y vinrent
bridge And when they came to-the bridge the Greeks there came
 qui leur contredisent le passage tant comme il peurent,
who to-them denied the passage as-much as they could
 et tant que li pelerin les en cachierent par forche de
and so-far that the pilgrims them thence chased by force of
 bataille et passerent. Et quant il vinrent a le chité, si
battle and crossed And when they came to the city so
 se logierent li haut homme et tendirent leur tentes
themselves lodged the high men and stretched their tents
 devant le palais de Blakerne, qui estoit l'empereur; et chis
before the palace of Blachernae which was (of-)the-emperor and this
 palais estoit tout droit u kief de le chité. Adont fist li
palace was all straight at-the end of the city Then had the
 dux de Venice molt merveillex engiens faire et molt biaux,
doge of Venice very marvelous engines made and very fair
 car il fist prendre les antaines qui portent les voiles des
for he had taken the yards which bear the sails of-the
 nes, qui bien avoient trente toises de lonc ou plus; si les
ships which well had thirty fathoms of length or more so them
 fist tres bien loier et atakier a boines cordes as mas,
had very well bound and fastened with good ropes to-the masts
 et fist faire bons pons par deseure et bons puis encoste de
and had made good bridges right above and good rails alongside of

cordes; si estoit li pons si les que trois chevalier armé i
ropes so was the bridge so wide that three knights armed there
 pooient aler de front. Et fist li dux les pons si bien warnir
could go in a-line And had the doge the bridges so well furnished
 et couvrir as costés d'esclavannes et de toile que cil
and covered at-the sides with-sackcloth and with canvas that those
 qui i montassent pour assalir n'eussent warde ne de
who there should-mount for to-assail not-should-have fear neither of
 quarriaus d'arbalestes ne de saietes; et lanchoit li pons tant
quarrels of-crossbows nor of arrows and reached the bridge so-far
 avant outre le nef qu'il avoit bien de hauteur du pont
forward beyond the ship that-it had well of height from-the bridge
 dusques a tere pres de quarante toises ou plus; et a cascun
as-far to earth near of forty fathoms or more and on each
 des uissiers avoit un mangonnel qui getoient adés
of-the horse-transport there-had a mangonel which threw continually
 as murs et en le vile. Quant li Venicien eurent leur nes
at-the walls and into the town When the Venetians had their ships
 apparellies si comme je vous ai chi conté, li pelerin d'autre
prepared so as I to-you have here recounted the pilgrims on-other
 part, qui assalloient par tere, avoient leur perrieres et leur
side who assailed by land had their petrarries and their
 mangonniaux si atornés qu'il getoient bien dusques u
mangonels so arranged that-they threw well as-far into-the
 palais l'empereur, et traioient; et chil de dedens retraioient
palace (of-)the-emperor and shot and those of within shot-back
 bien ensemment dusques as tentes as pelerins. Après il
well likewise as-far to-the tents of-the pilgrims Afterward they
 parlerent ensanle, li pelerin et li Venicien, et prisent jor
spoke together the pilgrims and the Venetians and took day
 a l'endemain d'assalir le chité et par terre et par mer
for the-next-day to-assail the city both by land and by sea

tot ensanle. Quant che vint l'endemain par matin, que li
all together When this came the-next-day in morning that the
 Venicien s'apareilloient et ordenoient leur vaissiax et se
Venetians themselves-prepared and ordered their vessels and themselves
 traissent au plus pres des murs pour assalir, et ensement
drew at-the most near to-the walls for to-assail and likewise
 li pelerin d'autre part avoient ordenees leur gens, este me
the pilgrims on-other side had ordered their people behold (to-)me
 vous que li empereres de Constantinoble, Alexes, issi hors
you that the emperor of Constantinople Alexius went-out out
 de la chité par une porte que on apele le Porte Roumaine
of the city by a gate that one calls the Gate Roman
 a tote se gent tote armee, et ordena illueques se gent et
with all his people all armed and ordered there his people and
 fist .xvij. batailles; en ches .xvij. batailles esmoit on bien
made seventeen battalions in these seventeen battalions reckoned one well
 pres de .c.m. hommes a cheval. Après si envoia
near of hundred-thousand men on horse Afterward so sent
 le plus de ches .xvij. batailles entour l'ost as Franchois
the most of these seventeen battalions around the-host of-the French
 environ, et les autres retint avec lui; et toute le gent a
about and the others kept with him and all the people on
 pié de le chité qui armes peurent porter fist issir hors, et
foot of the city who arms could bear had go-out out and
 si les fist rengier de kief en kief les murs, entre l'ost
so them had ranged from end to end (of-)the walls between the-host
 des Franchois et les murs. Quant li Franchois se
of-the French and the walls When the French themselves
 virrent si enclos a le reonde de ches batailles, si en furent
saw so enclosed in the round of these battalions so thereof were
 molt espoenté et ordenerent dont leur batalles, et ne fisent
very frightened and ordered then their battalions and not made

que .vij. batalles de .vij. chens chevaliers, que plus n'en
but seven battalions of seven hundred knights for more not-thereof
 n'avoient; et de ches .vij.c. en estoient li .l. a pié.
not-had and of these seven-hundred thereof were the fifty on foot

The Emperor Comes Out

XIV

The count of Flanders, the count of Saint Pol with Peter of Amiens, and Henry of Flanders take the three fighting battalions, while grooms and cooks armed in quilts and copper pots frighten the emperor's foot soldiers. The Venetians mount the walls and burn a stretch the size of Arras. When the count of Flanders turns back to the palisades on his counselors' advice, Saint Pol and Peter of Amiens refuse and ride at a walk against the emperor, and the ladies on the walls take them for angels.

Après, quant eurent si faitement leur gent ordenee, si 45
Afterward when they-had in-such wise their people ordered so
 demanda li cuens de Flandres le premiere bataille et on
asked the count of Flanders the first battalion and one
 li otria; l'autre batalle eut li cuens de Saint Pol et
to-him granted the-other battalion had the count of Saint Pol and
 mesires Pierres d'Amiens; le tierche batalle eut mesires
my-lord Peter of-Amiens the third battalion had my-lord
 Henris, li freres le conte de Flandres, et li Alemant. Et
Henry the brother (of-)the count of Flanders and the Germans And
 après estavlierent que li serjant a pié sivorroient les batailles
afterward they-established that the sergeants on foot would-follow the battalions
 a cheval, si que trois compaingnies ou quatre sivoient une
on horse so that three companies or four followed a
 batalle a cheval; et cascade des batalles avoit chiaux de
battalion on horse and each of-the battalions had those of

sen païs après lui. Après, quant il eurent atiré les trois
its country after it Afterward when they had arranged the three
 batailles qui se combateroient a l'empereur, si atirerent
battalions which themselves would-fight with the-emperor so they-arranged
 les autres quatre, qui l'ost garderoient; si que li marchis,
the other four which the-host would-guard so that the marquis
 qui estoit sires de l'ost, eut l'arriere warde, et warda l'ost
who was lord of the-host had the-rear guard and guarded the-host
 par deriere, et li quens Loouis eut l'autre emprés, et li
from behind and the count Louis had the-other next and the
 Champenois eurent le tierche, et li Borguenong eurent le
Champenois had the third and the Burgundians had the
 quarte, et ches quatre batalles warda li marchis. Et après
fourth and these four battalions guarded the marquis And afterward
 prist on tous les garchons qui les chevax gardoient, et
took one all the grooms who the horses guarded and
 tous les cuisiniers qui armes peurent porter; si les fist on
all the cooks who arms could bear so them had one
 trestous armer et de keutes pointes et de peniax et de
all armed both with quilts quilted and with saddle-cloths and with
 pos de coivre et de piletes et de pestiax, si k'il estoient
pots of copper and with mallets and with pestles so that-they were
 si lait et si hideus que le menue gent a pié l'empereur,
so ugly and so hideous that the small people on foot (of-)the-emperor
 qui estoient par dehors les murs, en eurent grant peur et
who were on outside the walls thereof had great fear and
 grant hisde, quant il les virent. Et ches quatre batalles,
great dread when they them saw And these four battalions
 que je vous ai chi nommees par devant, warderent l'ost,
that I to-you have here named just before guarded the-host
 pour peur que les batailles l'empereur qui estoient entor
for fear that the battalions (of-)the-emperor which were around

l'ost ne perchaissent ne ne damaissent l'ost ne les tentes;

the-host — should-pierce nor — should-harm the-host nor the tents

et les garchons et les quisiniers mist on par devers le

and the grooms and the cooks put one over toward the

cité, encontre les gens a pié l'empereur qui estoient rengié

city against the people on foot (of-)the-emperor who were ranged

contreval les murs. Quant le pietaille l'empereur virent no

down-along the walls When the foot-soldiery (of-)the-emperor saw our

menue gent si laidement armee, si en eurent si grand peur

small people so uglily armed so thereof had so great fear

et si grant hisde que cnques ne s'oserent mouvoir, ne

and so great dread that ever not themselves-dared move nor

venir vers aus, ne onques de chele part n'eut l'os warde.

come toward them nor ever from that side not-had the-host fear

Après, si kemanda on que li quens de Flandres et li quens 46

Afterward so commanded one that the count of Flanders and the count

de Saint Pol, et mesires Henris, qui eurent les trois batalles,

of Saint Pol and my-lord Henry who had the three battalions

se combatissent a l'empereur; et desfendi on bien que

themselves should-fight with the-emperor and forbade one well that

pour nul besoing que eles eussent, les autres quatre ne se

for any need that they should-have the other four — themselves

meussent de si a tant que eles veissent qu'eles eussent

should-move from here to the-time that they should-see that-they had

ausi comme tot perdu, qu'il ne fussent enclos ne assali

as it-were all lost that-they not should-be enclosed nor assailed

des autres batailles qui entor l'ost estoient. Entrementiers

by-the other battalions which around the-host were Meanwhile

que li Franchois estoient si faitement ordené, li Venicien,

that the French were in-such wise ordered the Venetians

qui en le mer estoient, ne s'oublierent mie; ains traissent leur

who on the sea were not themselves-forgot at-all but drew their

nes pres des murs, si k'il montoient bien seur les murs
ships near to-the walls so that-they mounted well on the walls
 de la chité par les eskieles et par les pons qu'il avoient
of the city by the ladders and by the bridges that-they had
 fait seur les nes, et traissent et lanchierent et fissent geter
made on the ships and shot and hurled and had shot
 leur mangonnias, et assalirent si durement que trop, et
their mangonels and assailed so hard that exceedingly and
 tant qu'il misent le fu en le vile; si que bien en i eut
so-far that-they put the fire in the town so that well thereof there had
 ars le grandeur de le chité d'Arras. Et ne s'oserent mie
burned the size of the city of-Arras And not themselves-dared at-all
 espartdre ne metre en le cité, car trop estoient peu gent, ne il
spread nor put into the city for too were few people nor they
 n'i eussent duree; ains se remisent ariere en leur nes.
not-there would-have endurance but themselves put-again back into their ships

47 Li haut homme qui d'autre part estcient, qui se devoient
The high men who on-other side were who themselves were-to
 combatre a l'empereur, avoient estavli que on avoit eslit
fight with the-emperor had established that one had chosen
 de cascunne bataille deus des plus preudoumes et des
from each battalion two of-the most worthy-men and of-the
 plus sages que on i savoit; et quanke il kemandoient
most wise that one there knew and whatever they commanded
 estoit fait; s'il kemandaissent: «Pongniés!» on pongnoit,
was done if-they commanded Spur one spurred
 s'il kemandaissent: «Alés le pas!» on aloit le pas. Li
if-they commanded Go the pace one went the pace The
 cuens de Flandres, qui avoit l'avangarde, chevaucha premiers
count of Flanders who had the-vanguard rode first
 encontre l'empereur tot le pas; et li empereres estoit bien
against the-emperor all the pace and the emperor was well

le quarte part d'une liwe loins du conte de Flandres,
the fourth part of-a league far from-the count of Flanders
 et faisoit chevauchier ses batalles encontre le conte; et li
and had ride his battalions against the count and the
 cuens de Saint Pol et mesires Pierres d'Amiens, qui avoit
count of Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens who had
 l'autre bataille emprés, chevauchoient un petit en sus par
the-other battalion next rode a little away off by
 encoste; et mesires Henris de Hainaut et li Alemant, qui
alongside and my-lord Henry of Hainaut and the Germans who
 avoient le tierche bataille, chevauchoient après; ne n'i
had the third battalion rode after nor not-there
 avoit cheval qui ne fust couvers de couvretures d'armes ou
had horse which not were covered with caparisons of-arms or
 de dras de soie par deseure toutes les autres couvretures.
of cloths of silk right above all the other caparisons
 Et trois compaignies ou quatre ou chinc de serjans a
And three companies or four or five of sergeants on
 pié sivoient cascune des batalles as kewes des chevax,
foot followed each of-the battalions at-the tails of-the horses
 et chevauchoient si rengié et si serré qu'il n'estoit nus si
and rode so ranged and so close that-it not-was anyone so
 hardis qui osast chevauchier devant l'autre. Et li empereres
bold who dared ride before the-other And the emperor
 chevauchoit encontre no gent a tot neuf batalles, ne n'i
rode against our people with all nine battalions nor not-there
 avoit chelui de ches neuf batalles, ou il n'eust .iij.m.
had one of these nine battalions where it not-had three-thousand
 chevaliers, ou quatre, ou chinc en tele i avoit il. Et
knights or four or five in such there had it And
 quant li quens de Flandres eut l'ost eslongié bien deux
when the count of Flanders had the-host withdrawn-from well two

arbalestees, si conseilher li disent: «Sire, vous ne faites
crossbow-shots his counselors to-him said Lord you not do
 mie bien qui vous alés combatre a l'empereur si en sus
at-all well who you go to-fight with the-emperor so away off
 de l'ost, car se vous i conbatés et vous i aiés mester
from the-host for if you there fight and you there have need
 d'aïe, chil qui wardent l'ost ne vous porront aidier. Mais
of-aid those who guard the-host not you will-be-able help But
 se vous nous en créés, vous retornerés as liches, et
if you us therein believe you will-return to-the palisades and
 illueques atenderés l'empereur plus seurement, s'il se veut
there will-await the-emperor more safely if-he himself wishes
 combatre.» Li cuens de Flandres retorna ariere as liches, si
to-fight The count of Flanders returned back to-the palisades so
 comme on li loa, et le bataille monseigneur Henri ausi.
as one him advised and the battalion (of-)my-lord Henry also
 Et li cuens de Saint Pol ne mesires Pierres d'Amiens ne
And the count of Saint Pol nor my-lord Peter of-Amiens not
 vaurrent retorner, ains se raasturent en mi le camp
wished to-return but themselves halted in the-midst-of the field
 tout coi a toute leur gent. Quant le bataille le conte de
all still with all their people When the battalion (of-)the count of
 Saint Pol et monseigneur Pierron d'Amiens virent le conte
Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens saw the count
 de Flandres retorner, si disent tot ensanle que li cuens de
of Flanders return so said all together that the count of
 Flandres faisoit grant honte qui retornoit, qui l'avangarde
Flanders did great shame who returned who the-vanguard
 avoit, et disent tot ensanle: «Sire, sire, li quens de Flandres
had and said all together Lord lord the count of Flanders
 retourne! Puis qu'il retourne, il vous laisse l'avantgarde. Or le
returns Since that-he returns he to-you leaves the-vanguard Now it

prenons, de par Dieu!» Si s'acorderent li baron ensanle,
let-us-take on behalf-of God So themselves-agreed the barons together
 et disent qu'il prenderoient l'avantgarde. Quant li quens
and said that-they would-take the-vanguard When the count
 de Flandres vit que li quens de Saint Pol ne mesires
of Flanders saw that the count of Saint Pol nor my-lord
 Pierres d'Amiens ne retorneroient mie, si leur manda par
Peter of-Amiens not would-return at-all so to-them sent-word by
 un message, et pria qu'il retournaissent. Et mesires Pierres
a messenger and prayed that-they should-return And my-lord Peter
 d'Amiens li remanda qu'il ne retorneroient nient. Et
of-Amiens to-him sent-word-back that-they not would-return at-all And
 li quens de Flandres li manda de rekief par deus
the count of Flanders to-him sent-word of anew by two
 messages que pour Dieu cheste honte ne li fesissent, mais
messengers that for God this shame not to-him should-do but
 retournaissent, que che li avoit on loé. Et li cuens de
should-return for this him had one advised And the count of
 Saint Pol et mesires Pierres d'Amiens li remanderent que
Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens to-him sent-word-back that
 n'ensi n'ensi ne retorneroient il. Adonques vint mesires
neither-thus nor-thus not would-return they Then came my-lord
 Pierres d'Amiens et mesires Wistasses de Canteleu, qui
Peter of-Amiens and my-lord Eustace of Canteleux who
 estoient maistre meneur de la bataille, si disent: «Seigneur,
were master leaders of the battalion so said Lords
 chevauchiés, de par Dieu, tot le pas!» Et il commencent
ride on behalf-of God all the pace And they begin
 a chevauchier le pas, et tout chil de l'ost, qui estoient
to ride the pace and all those of the-host who were
 demoré arriere, commençierent a crier après: «Veés, veés!
remained behind began to cry after See see

Li quens de Saint Pol et mesires Pierres d'Amiens veut
The count of Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens wishes
 assanler a l'empereur. Sire Diex!» commenchièrent il a
to-join-battle with the-emperor Lord God began they to
 dire et a crier, «Sire Diex, soiés hui warde d'aus et de
say and to cry Lord God be today guard of-them and of
 toute leur compaingnie! Veés! Il ont l'avantgarde que li
all their company See They have the-vanguard that the
 cuens de Flandres devoit avoir! Sire Diex, conduiés les a
count of Flanders was-to have Lord God conduct them to
 sauveté!» Et les dames et les demiseles du palais estoient
safety And the ladies and the damsels of-the palace were
 montees as fenestres, et autres gens de le cité, et dames
mounted to-the windows and other people of the city and ladies
 et demiseles, estoient montees as murs de le chité, et
and damsels were mounted on-the walls of the city and
 esgardoient chevauchier chele bataille et l'empereur d'autre
watched ride that battalion and the-emperor on-other
 part, et disoient entr'ax que che sanloit des noes que
side and said among-themselves that it seemed of-the ours that
 che fussent angle, si erent il bel, pour chou qu'il estoient
these were angels so were they fair for this that-they were
 si belement armé et leur cheval si belement couvert.
so handsomely armed and their horses so handsomely covered

The Armies Face to Face

XV

Shamed by his own knights, the count of Flanders rides up beside Saint Pol, and the armies meet across a hillock. The emperor halts, astounded; the French will not cross the great conduit so far from their camp, and the emperor goes back into the city, blamed by all for not fighting so few. The Venetians tell of their assault. The townsmen demand battle or the young Alexius, and the emperor promises battle and flees at midnight.

Quant li chevalier de le bataille le conte de Flandres

48

When the knights of the battalion (of-)the count of Flanders

virent que li quens de Saint Pol et mesires Pierres

saw that the count of Saint Pol and my-lord Peter

d'Amiens ne retorneroit en nule fin, si vinrent au conte,

of-Amiens not would-return in any end so came to-the count

se li disent: «Sire, vous faites grant honte qui ne vous

so to-him said Lord you do great shame who not yourself

mouvés, et sachiés que se vous ne chevauchiés, nous ne

move and know that if you not ride we not

vous tenrons plus a nous!» Quant li quens de Flandres oï

you will-hold longer to us When the count of Flanders heard

chou, si feri cheval des esperons et tot li autre après,

this so struck horse with-the spurs and all the others after

et poincent tant qu'il atainsent le bataille le conte de

and spurred so-far that-they overtook the battalion (of-)the count of

Saint Pol et monseigneur Pierre d'Amiens, et quant i

Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens and when they

l'eurent atainte, si chevauchierent encoste aus tot de front;

it-had overtaken so rode alongside them all in a-line

et le bataille monseigneur Henri chevaucha deriere. Et les

and the battalion (of-)my-lord Henry rode bebind And the

batailles l'empereur et les noes batailles s'estoient ja si
battalions (of-)the-emperor and the our battalions themselves-were already so
 aprochies, que li arbalestier l'empereur traioient bien en nos
approached that the crossbowmen (of-)the-emperor shot well into our
 gens, et nostre arbalestier ensement es gens l'empereur,
people and our crossbowmen likewise into-the people (of-)the-emperor
 et n'avoit que un tertre a monter entre l'empereur et
and not-there-had but a hillock to mount between the-emperor and
 nos batailles, et montoient les batalles l'empereur, d'une
our battalions and mounted the battalions (of-)the-emperor on-one
 part et les noes d'autre. Et quant no gent vinrent en son
side and the ours on-other And when our people came on top-of
 le tertre et li empereres les vit, si s'arresta et tote se
the hillock and the emporor them saw so himself-halted and all his
 gent ausi, et furent si abaubi et si esbahi de chou que
people also and were so astounded and so dismayed of this that
 nos batalles chevauchioient si de front encontre aus, qu'il
our battalions rode so in a-line against them that-they
 ne se seurent conseilier. Entrementiers qu'il estoient
not themselves knew-how-to counsel Meanwhile that-they were
 illueques si abaubi, les autres batailles l'empereur, qui avoient
there so astounded the other battalions (of-)the-emperor which had
 esté envoïes entour l'ost as Francois, repairierent ariere
been sent around the-host of-the French returned back
 et s'asanlerent toutes ensanle avec l'empereur u val. Et
and themselves-assembled all together with the-emperor in-the valley And
 quant li Francois virent trestoutes les batailles l'empereur
when the French saw all the battalions (of-)the-emperor
 assannees ensanle, si s'arestèrent en son le tertre tout coi, et
assembled together so themselves-halted on top-of the hillock all still and
 se merveillèrent que li empereur voloit faire, et envoierent
themselves marveled what the emporor wished to-do and sent

li conte et li haut homme des trois batailles li un as
the counts and the high men of-the three battalions the ones to-the
 autres, pour prendre conseil que il feroient, s'il iroient
others for to-take counsel what they would-do if-they would-go
 dusques a l'ost l'empereur ou non. Et n'eurent mie conseil
as-far to the-host (of-)the-emperor or not And not-had at-all counsel
 qu'il i alaissent, car il estoient molt en sus de l'ost
that-they there should-go for they were very away off from the-host
 et, s'il se combatoient la ou li empereres estoit, chil
and if-they themselves fought there where the emperor was those
 qui wardent l'ost ne les vesroient mie, ne ne leur porroient
who guard the-host not them would-see at-all nor not them could
 aidier, se mestiers en estoit, et, d'autre part, entr'ax
help if need thereof was and on-other side between-them
 et l'empereur avoit uns grand caneus, uns grans conduis,
and the-emperor there-had a great canal a great conduit
 par ou l'iawe venoit en Constantinoble, que, s'il i
by where the-water came into Constantinople so-that if-they there
 passaissent, il eussent grant damage de leur gent; et pour
should-cross they would-have great harm of their people and for
 chou n'eurent il mie conseil qu'il i alaissent. Entrementiers
this not-had they at-all counsel that-they there should-go Meanwhile
 que li Franchois parloient ensi ensanle, este me vous que
that the French spoke thus together behold (to-)me you that
 li empereres se mist arriere en Constantinoble; et quant
the emperor himself put back into Constantinople and when
 il fu venus, si fu molt blasmés durement et de dames
he was come so was very blamed greatly both by ladies
 et de demiseles, et d'uns et d'autres de chou qu'il ne
and by damsels and by-ones and by-others of this that-he not

s'estoit combatus a si peu de gent comme li Francois
himself-was fought with so few of people as the French
 estoient, a tot si grant pule comme il avoit mené.

were with all so great multitude as he had led

49 Quant li empereres fu ensi faitement retornés, si s'en

When the emperor was thus wise returned so themselves-thence
 renvinrent li pelerin a leur tentes et se desarmerent, et
came-back the pilgrims to their tents and themselves disarmed and

quant il furent desarmé, li Venicien qui estoient passé en nes
when they were disarmed the Venetians who were crossed in ships

et en barges, si vinrent demander de leur nouveles et disent:
and in barges so came to-ask of their news and said

«Par foi! nous aviemes oï dire que vous vous combatiés
By faith we had heard tell that you yourselves fought

as Grius; si aviemes molt grant peur de vous, si veniemes a
with-the Greeks so we-had very great fear for you so we-came to
 vous.» Et li Francois leur respondirent et disent: «Par foi!

you And the French to-them answered and said By faith
 le grace Dieu, nous avons bien fait, car nous alames encontre
the grace (of-)God we have well done for we went against

l'empereur, et li empereres n'osa assanler a nous!» Et li
the-emperor and the emperor not-dared to-join-battle with us And the

Francois redemanderent des nouveles as Veniciens, et il
French asked-in-turn of-the news of-the Venetians and they

leur disent: «Par foi!» fissent il, «nous avons durement asali,
to-them said By faith said they we have hard assailed

et entrames en le cité par deseur les murs, et meismes le fu
and entered into the city right above the walls and we-put the fire

en le chité si comme molt en i eut d'arse de le chité.»
in the city so that much thereof there had of-burned of the city

Si comme li Francois et li Venicien parloient ensanle, 50

So as the French and the Venetians spoke together
 si leva molt grans mumures en le vile, et disent chil de
so rose very great murmurs in the town and said those of
 le vile a l'empereur qu'il les delivrast des Francois
the town to the-emperor that-be them should-deliver from-the French
 qui les avoient assis, et que s'il ne se combatoit a
who them had besieged and that if-he not himself fought with
 aus, qu'il iroient pour le jone vaslet que li Francois
them that-they would-go for the young youth whom the French
 avoient amené, s'en feroient empereur et leur seigneur.
had brought so-thereof would-make emperor and their lord

Quant li empereres oï chou, si leur creanta que il se 51

When the emperor heard this so to-them promised that he himself
 combateroit l'endemain a aus, et quant che vint vers
would-fight the-next-day with them and when this came toward
 mie nuit, si s'en fui li empereres hors de le vile
mid night so himself-thence fled the emperor out of the town
 a tout tant de gent comme il peut mener avec lui.
with all as-much of people as he could lead with him

Kyrsac Restored

XVI

The Greeks come for Alexius, and the barons lead him to the palace, where his father Kyrsac is freed and seated beside him on the imperial throne, and Murzuphlus is made chief bailiff. The sultan of Iconium asks help against his brother, but the barons will not leave the city. The French empress, wife of Branas, receives them coldly, and a king of Nubia branded with a cross tells of his pilgrimage. The host lodges beyond the port and resolves to pull down fifty fathoms of the wall.

- 52 Quant che vint l'endemain par matin et que chil de le
When this came the-next-day in morning and that those of the
vile seurent que li empereres se estoit fuis, si ne font
town knew that the emperor himself was fled so not do
il mais el, si viennent il as portes, si les ouvrent
they more else so come they to-the gates so them opened
et si issirent hors et si vinrent a l'ost des Francheis,
and so went-out out and so came to the-host of-the French
et demanderent et enquisent Alexe, le fil Kyrsaac. Et on
and asked and inquired-after Alexius the son (of-)Kyrsac And one
leur enseigna que a le tente le marchis le troveroient.
to-them showed that at the tent (of-)the marquis him they-would-find
Quant il vinrent la, si le troverent; si en fisent si
When they came there so him found so thereof made his
ami molt grant feste et molt grant goie et merchierent
friends very great feast and very great joy and thanked
molt les barons et disent que molt avoient bien fait et
much the barons and said that very they-had well done and
grant barnage, qui si faitement avoient ouvré, et disent
great valor who in-such wise had wrought and said
que li empereres s'en estoit fuis, et qu'il venissent
that the emperor himself-thence was fled and that-they should-come

en le chité et u palais comme u leur. Adonques si
into the city and into-the palace as into-the theirs Then so
 sanlerent tout li haut baron de l'ost, et prisent Alexe, le
assembled all the high barons of the-host and took Alexius the
 fil Kyrsac, si l'en menerent u palais a grant goie
son (of-)Kyrzac so him-thence led into-the palace with great joy
 et a grant feste. Et quant il furent venu u palais, si
and with great feast And when they were come into-the palace so
 fisent Kyrsac sen pere metre hors de prison et se femme,
had Kyrzac his father put out of prison and his wife
 que ses freres, qui avoit tenu l'empire, i avoit fait metre.
whom his brother who had held the-empire there had had put
 Et quant Kyrsacs fu hors de prison, si eut molt grant
And when Kyrzac was out of prison so had very great
 goie de sen fil, et acola loi et baisa, et merchia molt
joy of his son and embraced him and kissed and thanked much
 tous les barons qui lueques estoient, et dist que, par l'aiwe
all the barons who there were and said that by the-aid
 de Dieu avant et de le leur, estoit il hors de prison.
of God first and of the theirs was he out of prison
 Adonques si furent aportees deus caiieres a or, et assist on
Then so were brought two chairs of gold and seated one
 Kyrsac en l'une et Alexe, sen fil, en l'autre par delés, et
Kyrzac in the-one and Alexius his son in the-other by beside and
 fu Kyrsaacs saisis du siege emperial. Adonques dist on a
was Kyrzac seized of-the seat imperial Then said one to
 l'empereur: «Sire, il a chaiens un haut homme en prison,
the-emperor Lord it has in-here a high man in prison
 Morchoffles a a non, qui bien i a esté set ans. Se
Murziphlus has as name who well there has been seven years If
 vostre volentés i fust, il fust boin que on le mesist
your will therein were it would-be good that one him should-put

hors de prison.» Adonques si fu Morchoffles mis hors de
out of prison Then so was Murzuphlus put out of
 prison, puis en fist li empereres sen maistre bailliu, dont
prison then of-him made the emperor his chief bailiff whereof
 li empereres eut puis après molt mal werredon, si comme
the emperor had then afterward very ill reward so as
 nous vous dirons après. Or avint, après que li Francois
we to-you will-tell afterward Now happened after that the French
 eurent si faitement ouvré, que li soudans du Coine
had in-such wise wrought that the sultan of-the Iconium
 oï dire que si faitement avoient fait li Francois. Si
heard tell that in-such wise had done the French So
 vint parler a aus la ou il estoient encore logié dehors
came to-speak to them there where they were still lodged outside
 Coustantinoble, si leur dist: «Chertes, seigneur», fist-il,
Constantinople so to-them said Certainly lords said-he
 «vous avés fait molt grant barnage et molt grant proeche,
you have done very great valor and very great prowess
 qui si grant cose comme Constantinoble est, qui est li kiés
who so great thing as Constantinople is which is the head
 du monde, avés conquis, et avés remis le droit oir de
of-the world have conquered and have put-back the rightful heir of
 Coustantinoble en sen siege et coroné l'avés a empereur.»
Constantinople in his seat and crowned him-have as emperor
 Che disoient il u país que Coustantinoble estoit li kiés
This said they in-the country that Constantinople was the head
 du monde. «Seigneur», fist li soudans, «je vous vaurroie
of-the world Lords said the sultan I you would-wish
 proier d'une cose que je vous dirai. Jou ai un mien frere
to-pray of-a thing that I to-you will-tell I have a my-own brother
 mainsné de mi, qui m'a soustraite me tere et me
younger than me who from-me-has taken-away my land and my

seignorie du Coine par traïson, dont g'estoie sires et dont
lordship of-the Iconium by treason whereof I-was lord and whereof
je sui drois oirs. Se vous me voliés aidier a conquerre me
I am rightful heir If you me wished to-help to conquer my
tere et me seignourie, je vous dourroie molt grant plenté
land and my lordship I to-you would-give very great plenty
de men avoir, et si me feroie crestiener et tous chiaux
of my wealth and so myself would-have christened and all those
qui a mi se tenroient, se je ravoie me seignourie, et
who to me themselves would-bold if I had-again my lordship and
se vous me voliés aidier.» Et li baron respondirent qu'il
if you me wished to-help And the barons answered that-they
s'en conselleroient, et fu mandés de Venice li dux
themselves-thereof would-counsel and was summoned of Venice the doge
et li marchis et tout li haut baron, et s'en
and the marquis and all the high barons and themselves-thereon
assenlerent a molt grant conseil, et tant que leur consaus
assembled in very great council and so-far that their counsel
ne leur aporta mie qu'il fesissent chou que li soudans
not to-them brought at-all that-they should-do this that the sultan
leur requeroit. Et quant il vinrent de leur conseil, si
of-them requested And when they came from their council so
respondirent au soudan qu'il ne pooient mie faire chou
answered to-the sultan that-they not could at-all do this
qu'il leur requeroit, car il avoient encore leur couvenanches
that-be of-them requested for they had still their covenants
a avoir de l'empereur, et que che seroit uns perix de laier
to have from the-emperor and that this would-be a peril to leave
si grant cose comme Coustantinoble est en tel point comme
so great thing as Constantinople is in such point as

ele estoit; si ne l'osseroient laissier. Quant li soudans oï
it was so not it-they-would-dare leave When the sultan heard
 chou, si en fu tous courchiés, si s'en rala.

this so thereat was all angered so himself-thence went-back

- 53 Après quant li baron eurent mené Alexe u palais, si
Afterward when the barons had led Alexius into-the palace so
 demanderent de le sereur le roi de Franche, que on apeloit
asked of the sister (of-)the king of France whom one called
 l'empeerris de Franche, se ele vivoit encore, et on dist ouil
the-empress of France if she lived still and one said yes
 et que ele estoit mariee, que uns haus hons de le chité, li
and that she was married for a high man of the city the
 Vernas avoit a non, l'avoit espousee; si manoit en un palais
Branas had as name her-had wedded so dwelt in a palace
 pres d'iluec. La si l'alerent veir li baron, et si le saluerent,
near of-there There so her-went to-see the barons and so her greeted
 et molt li pramissent a faire lui servige, et ele leur fist
and much to-her promised to do her service and she to-them made
 molt mauvais sanlant et molt estoit corchie de chou qu'il
very bad countenance and very was angered of this that-they
 estoient la alé et de chou qu'il avoient chelui Alexe coroné;
were there gone and of this that-they had that Alexius crowned
 ne ne voloit parler a aus, ains i faisoit parler un latimier, et
nor not wished to-speak to them but there had speak an interpreter and
 disoit li latimiers qu'ele ne savoit nient de Franchois. Mais li
said the interpreter that-she not knew anything of French But the
 quens Loeis (chis estoit ses cousins) si s'acointa a lui.
count Louis this-one was her cousin so himself-acquainted with her

- 54 Après il avint un jour que li baron alerent esbanier u
Afterward it happened one day that the barons went to-disport in-the
 palais pour veir Kysrac et l'empereur sen fil. Si comme li
palace for to-see Kysrac and the-emperor his son So as the

baron estoient laiens u palais, si vint illueques uns rois
barons were in-there in-the palace so came there a king
 qui toute avoit le char noire, et avoit une crois en mi
who all had the flesch black and had a cross in the-midst-of
 le front qui li avoit esté faite d'un caut fer. Chis rois
the forehead which to-him had been made with-a hot iron This king
 si sejournoit en une molt rike abeïe en le chité, ou Alexes,
so sojourned in a very rich abbey in the city where Alexius
 qui avoit esté empereres, avoit kemandé que il fust et
who had been emperor had commanded that he should-be and
 en fust sires et demisiaus, tant comme il i vausist
thereof should-be lord and young-lord so-long as he there would-wish
 sejourner. Quant li empereres le vit venir, si se leva
to-sojourn When the emperor him saw come so himself rose
 encontre lui et s'en fist molt grant feste. Si demanda
to-meet him and himself-tbereof made very great feast So asked
 li empereres as barons: «Savés vous ore», fist il, «qui
the emperor of-the barons Know you now said he who
 chist hons est? — Sire, nennil», fisent li baron. «Par foi!»
this man is Lord no said the barons By faith
 fist li empereres, «ch'est li rois de Nubie, qui est venus
said the emperor this-is the king of Nubia who is come
 en pelerinage en cheste vile.» Et fist on parler latimiers a
in pilgrimage to this town And had one speak interpreters to
 lui, et fist on lui demander ou se tere estoit, tant qu'il
him and had one of-him asked where his land was so-far that-be
 respondi as latimiers, en sen langage, que se tere estoit
answered to-the interpreters in his language that his land was
 encore cent journees dela Jherusalem, et de la estoit il
yet hundred days beyond Jerusalem and from there was he
 venus en Jherusalem en pelerinage; et si dist que, quant il
come into Jerusalem in pilgrimage and so said that when he

mut de sen païs, qu'il mut bien soixante hommes de se
set-out from his country that-he set-out well sixty men of his
 tere avec lui; et quant il vint en Jherusalem n'en i
land with him and when he came into Jerusalem not-thereof there
 eut il de vis que dis, et quant il vint de Jherusalem
had it of living but ten and when he came from Jerusalem
 en Coustantinoble, n'en avoit il que deus vis. Et si dist
into Constantinople not-thereof had it but two living And so said
 qu'il voloit aler en pelerinage a Rome et de Rome a
that-he wished to-go in pilgrimage to Rome and from Rome to
 Saint Jake et puis revenir s'ent ariere en Jherusalem,
Saint James and then come himself-thence back into Jerusalem
 s'il pooit tant vivre, et puis illueques morir. Et si dist
if-he could so-long live and then there die And so said
 que tot chil de se tere estoient crestien, et quant li enfes
that all those of his land were Christians and when the child
 estoit nes et on le baptisoit, que on li faisoit une crois
was born and one him baptized that one on-him made a cross
 en mi le front d'un caut fer ausi comme il avoit.
in the-midst-of the forehead with-a hot iron just as he had
 Si esgarderent li baron chu roi a molt grant merveille.

So looked-at the barons this king with very great wonder

- 55 Après, quant li baron eurent coroné Alexe si faitement
Afterward when the barons had crowned Alexius in-such wise
 comme je vous ai dit, si atira on que mesires Pierres
as I to-you have said so arranged one that my-lord Peter
 de Braichoel, et il et se gent, manroient u palais avec
of Bracieux both he and his people would-dwell in-the palace with
 l'empereur; et puis après si atirerent li baron comment il
the-emperor and then afterward so arranged the barons how they
 se herbegeoient, et n'oserent mie manoir du tot en
themselves would-lodge and not-dared at-all dwell of-the all in

le chité pour les Grius qui traïteur estoient; ains s'en
the city for the Greeks who traitors were but themselves-thence
 alerent herbergier outre le port, par devers le tour de
went to-lodge beyond the port over toward the tower of
 Galatha, et se herbegierent illueques tout ensanle en
Galata and themselves lodged there all together in
 unes mansions qui i estoient, et traissent leur navie et
some dwellings which there were and drew their navy and
 arriverent devant aus, et aloient en le chité quant il
landed before them and went into the city when they
 voloient. Et quant il voloient aler par yawe, si passoient en
wished And when they wished to-go by water so crossed in
 barges, et quant il voloient aler a cheval, si passoient au
barges and when they wished to-go on horse so crossed at-the
 pont. Adonques, quant il furent herbegié, si prisent conseil
bridge Then when they were lodged so took counsel
 ensanle et li Francois et li Venicien que il feroient
together both the French and the Venetians that they would-have
 abatre cinquante toises des murs de le vile, car il
thrown-down fifty fathoms of-the walls of the town for they
 doutoient que chil de le chité ne revelaissent encontre aus.
feared that those of the city — should-rebel against them

The Coronation of Alexius

XVII

Alexius is crowned and pays a hundred thousand marks: half to the Venetians, and most of the rest to clear the French debt for the fleet. Half the host rides with him for three months and wins twenty cities and forty castles, while Kyrzac pays nothing and the Greeks rebuild their walls higher. Called back for All Saints, the barons demand their money. Alexius asks delay after delay and, on Murzuphlus's advice, refuses to pay; the barons threaten to take their due from his goods.

- 56 Après si sanlerent un jour tout li baron u palais
Afterward so assembled one day all the barons in-the palace
l'empereur, et demanderent leur convenanches a l'empereur;
(of-)the-emperor and asked their covenants of the-emperor
et respondi qu'il les tenroit bien, mais il voloit anchois
and he-answered that-be them would-keep well but he wished first
estre coronés. Et puis si atirerent et prisent un jour
to-be crowned And then so they-arranged and took a day
de li coroner; et a chel jour il fu coronés hautement
to him crown and on that day he was crowned highly
comme empereres par le volenté de sen pere qui li otria
as emperor by the will of his father who to-him granted
boinement. Et quant il fut coronés, li baron requisent leur
gladly And when he was crowned the barons requested their
paiement; et il dist qu'il paieroit molt volentiers chou qu'il
payment and he said that-be would-pay very gladly this that-be
porroit, et paia adonques bien .c.m. mars. Et de ches
could and paid then well hundred-thousand marks And of these
.c.m. mars rechurent li Venicien le moitié, car il
hundred-thousand marks received the Venetians the half for they
devoient avoir le moitié des conquestes; et des .l.m.
were-to have the half of-the conquests and of-the fifty-thousand

mars qui remesent, leur paia on .xxxvi.m. mars que li
marks which remained to-them paid one thirty-six-thousand marks that the
 Francois leur devoient encore de leur navie; et des autres
French to-them owed still for their navy and of-the other
 .xx.m. mars qui remessent as pelerins, rendi on a tous

twenty-thousand marks which remained to-the pilgrims repaid one to all
 chiaus qui avoient presté de leur avoir au paiaage du passage.

those who had lent of their wealth to-the payment of-the passage

Aprés li empereres requist les barons, et si leur dist que 57

Afterward the emperor besought the barons and so to-them said that
 il n'avoit fors Coustantinoble, et que peu li vauroit s'il
he not-had except Constantinoble and that little him would-avail if-he

n'avoit autre cose, car ses oncles tenoit toutes les chités et
not-had other thing for his uncle held all the cities and

les castiax qui siens devoient estre; et requist les barons
the castles which his were-to be and besought the barons

que il li aidassent a conquerre de le tere entor, et

that they him should-help to conquer of the land around and

il leur douroit encore du sien molt volentiers. Adonques

he to-them would-give yet of-the his very gladly Then

respondirent que che voloient il molt volentiers, que tot

they-answered that this wished they very gladly that all

chil qui gaignier voloient i alaissent. Adonc si i ala

those who to-gain wished there should-go Then so there went

bien le moitié de chiaux de l'ost avec Alexe, et l'autre

well the half of those of the-host with Alexius and the-other

moitié remest en Coustantinoble pour recevoir le paiement,

half remained in Constantinoble for to-receive the payment

et Kyrsaacs remest pour faire le paiement as barons.

and Kyrzac remained for to-make the payment to-the barons

Et Alexes s'en ala a toute l'ost et conquist de le

And Alexius himself-thence went with all the-host and conquered of the

tere bien vint chités et bien quarante castiax ou plus; et
land well twenty cities and well forty castles or more and
 Alexes, li autres empereres, ses oncles, s'en fuioit tous
Alexius the other emperor his uncle himself-thence fled all
 dis avant, et furent bien li Francois avec Alexe largement
days ahead and were well the French with Alexius fully
 trois mois. Et entrementiers que Alexes fist chele chevauchie,
three months And meanwhile that Alexius made that expedition
 firent chil de Coustantinoble leur mur refaire plus fort et
had those of Constantinople their wall remade more strong and
 plus haut qu'il n'estoit devant, que li Francois avoient fait
more high than-it was before whereof the French had had
 abatre bien chinquante toises quant il eurent le vile prise,
thrown-down well fifty fathoms when they had the town taken
 pour chou que il doutoient que li Griu ne revelassent
for this that they feared that the Greeks — should-rebel
 encontre aus. Et quant li baron qui estoit demoré pour
against them And when the barons who were remained for
 le paiement recevoir virent que Kyrsaacs ne leur paioit
the payment to-receive saw that Kyrzac not to-them paid
 nient, si manderent as autres barons, qui estoient alé
at-all so sent-word to-the other barons who were gone
 avec Alexe, qu'il s'en revenissent, que Kyrsaacs ne
with Alexius that-they themselves-thence should-come-back for Kyrzac not
 les paioit nient, et qu'il s'en fussent tout venu
them paid at-all and that-they themselves-thence should-be all come
 dedens le feste Tous Sains. Quant li baron oïrent chou, si
within the feast (of-)All Saints When the barons heard this so
 disent a l'empereur qu'il s'en retourneroient; quant li
said to the-emperor that-they themselves-thence would-return when the
 empereres oï chou, si dist qu'il s'en retourneroit puis
emperor heard this so said that-he himself-thence would-return since

qu'il s'en retournent, car il ne s'osoit mie fier en
that-they themselves-thence returned for he not himself-dared at-all trust in
 ches Grius. Si s'en revinrent arriere en Coustantinoble;
these Greeks So themselves-thence came-back back into Constantinople
 si s'en ala li empereres en sen pailais, et li pelerin
so himself-thence went the emperor into his palace and the pilgrims
 s'en alerent a leur herberges outre le port.
themselves-thence went to their lodgings beyond the port

Aprés si s'asanlerent li conte et li haut homme et 58
Afterward so themselves-assembled the counts and the high men and
 li dux de Venice et li empereres ensanle. Si demanderent
the doge of Venice and the emperor together So asked
 li Francois leur paiement a l'empereur, et li empereres
the French their payment of the-emperor and the emperor
 respondi qu'il avoit si se chité raience et ses gens qu'il
answered that-he had so his city ransomed and his people that-be
 ne leur avoit que paier, mais donnaissent lui un terme, et
not to-them had what to-pay but they-should-give him a term and
 par dedens il se pourvesroit qu'il les paieroit. Il li
by within he himself would-provide that-be them would-pay They to-him
 dounerent, et quant li termes fu passés, il ne les paia
gave and when the term was passed he not them paid
 nient, et li baron redemanderent de rekief leur paiement. Et
at-all and the barons asked-again of anew their payment And
 li empereres redemanda encore un respit, et on li donna.
the emperor asked-again yet a respite and one to-him gave
 Et par dedens si homme et ses gens et chis Morchoffles
And by within his men and his people and this Murzupblus
 qu'il avoit jeté de prison vinrent a lui et se li disent:
whom-he had cast from prison came to him and so to-him said
 «Ha! sire, vous leur avés trop païé, ne leur païés plus!
Ab lord you to-them have too-much paid not to-them pay more

Vous estes tous raiens, tant leur avés vous païé! Mais
You are all ransomed so-much to-them have you paid But
 faites les ent aler et si les congeés hors de vo tere.»
have them thence go and so them dismiss out of your land
 Et Alexes si creï chu conseil, si ne leur vaut nient paier.
And Alexius so believed this counsel so not them wished at-all to-pay
 Quant chus respis fu passés et li Franchois virrent que li
When this respite was passed and the French saw that the
 empereres ne les paioit nient, si s'asanlerent tout li conte
emperor not them paid at-all so themselves-assembled all the counts
 et li haut homme de l'ost, si s'en alerent u palais
and the high men of the-host so themselves-thence went to-the palace
 l'empeureur et demanderent de rekief leur paiement. Et li
(of-)the-emperor and asked of anew their payment And the
 empereres leur respondi qu'il ne les pooit paier en nule
emperor to-them answered that-he not them could pay in any
 fin, et li baron li respondirent que, s'il ne les paioit,
end and the barons to-him answered that if-he not them paid
 il pourcacheroient tant du sien qu'il seroient païé.
they would-procure so-much of-the his that-they would-be paid

The Fireships

XVIII

Two knights demand the payment and are told to leave the land. The doge meets Alexius at the harbor and defies him: they took him out of the dung and will put him back in it. Twice the Greeks send burning ships against the fleet at night, and the Venetians turn them away; food is dear in the camp. The Greeks build wooden towers on their stone ones, and Murzuphlus promises the traitors to rid them of the French and the emperor within eight days in return for the crown.

A ches paroles se partirent li baron du palais 59
At these words themselves departed the barons from-the palace
et s'en revinrent a leur herberges, et quant il
and themselves-thence came-back to their lodgings and when they
furent revenu, si prisent conseil ensanle qu'il feroient, tant
were returned so took counsel together what-they would-do so-far
qu'il renvoierent a l'empereur deus chevaliers, et se lui
that-they sent-again to the-emperor two knights and so to-him
manderent de rekief qu'il leur envoiaist leur paiement. Et il
sent-word of anew that-he to-them should-send their payment And he
respondi as messages qu'il ne les paieroit nient, qu'il leur
answered to-the messengers that-he not them would-pay at-all for-he to-them
avoit trop païé et qu'il ne les doutoit nule creature; ains
had too-much paid and that-he not them feared any creature but
leur manda qu'il s'en alaissent et widaissent se
to-them sent-word that-they themselves-thence should-go and should-quit his
tere, et bien seussent il que, s'il ne le widoient auques
land and well should-know they that if-they not it quit somewhat
par tans, qu'il leur feroit anui. A tant li message
in time that-he to-them would-do harm With that the messengers
s'en revinrent et fisent savoir as barons chou que li
themselves-thence came-back and made known to-the barons this that the

empereres avoit respondu. Li baron, quant il oïrent chou,
emperor had answered The barons when they heard this
 si se consellierent qu'il feroient, tant que li dux de
so themselves counseled what-they would-do so-far that the doge of
 Venice dist qu'il voloit aler parler a lui. Si prist un message,
Venice said that-he wished to-go to-speak to him So took a messenger
 se li manda qu'il venist a lui parler seur le port. Et
so to-him sent-word that-he should-come to him to-speak on the port And
 li empereres i vint a cheval; et li dux fist armer quatre
the emperor there came on horse and the doge had armed four
 galies, si s'en entra en l'une, et les trois fist aler avec
galleys so himself-thence entered into the-one and the three had go with
 lui pour li warder; et quant il vint vers le rive du port,
him for him to-guard and when he came toward the bank of-the port
 si vit l'empeureur qui i estoit venus a cheval, si parla a lui
so saw the-emperor who there was come on horse so spoke to him
 et se li dist: «Alexe, que cuides tu faire?» fist li dux,
and so to-him said Alexius what thinkest thou to-do said the doge
 «preng warde que nous t'avons geté de grant caitiveté, si
take heed that we thee-have cast from great wretchedness so
 t'avons fait seigneur et coroné a empereur; ne nous tenras
thee-have made lord and crowned as emperor not to-us wilt-keep
 tu mie» fist li dux, «nos convenenches, ne si n'en feras
thou at-all said the doge our covenants nor so not-thereof wilt-do
 plus? — Naie», fist li empereres, «je n'en ferai plus que
more No said the emperor I not-thereof will-do more than
 fait en ai! — Non?» dist li dux, «garchons malvais; nous
done thereof have No said the doge knave wicked we
 t'avons», fist li dux, «geté de le merde et en le merde
thee-have said the doge cast from the dung and into the dung

te remeterons; et je te desfi et bien saches tu que je
thee will-put-back and I thee defy and well know thou that I
 te pourcacherai mal a men pooir de ches pas en avant.»

for-thee will-procure evil to my power from these steps on forward

A ches paroles s'en parti li dux et s'en revint 60

At these words himself-thence departed the doge and himself-thence came-back

arriere. Si s'asanlerent li conte et tout li haut homme de

back So themselves-assembled the counts and all the high men of

l'ost et li Venicien pour prendre conseil que il feroient; et

the-host and the Venetians for to-take counsel what they would-do and

disent li Venicien qu'il ne pooient mie faire leur eschieles

said the Venetians that-they not could at-all make their ladders

ne leur engiens seur leur nes pour le tans qui trop estoit

nor their engines on their ships for the weather which too was

fres; si estoit le saisons entre feste Tous Sains et Noel.

cold so was the season between feast (of-)All Saints and Christmas

Entrementiers qu'il estoient illueques si esmari, si ne fait

Meanwhile that-they were there so dismayed so not does

mais el li empereres et si traïteur qui entour li estoient,

more else the emperor and his traitors who around him were

si se pourpenserent d'une grant traïson, qu'il voloient

so themselves bethought of-a great treason that-they wished

*** il prendre en le chité par nuit nes; si les font il

(lacuna) they take in the city by night ships so them have they

toutes emplir de bien seske legnne et de lardons dedens

all filled with very dry wood and with bacon within

le legnne; si font il bouter le fu ens. Quant che vint

the wood so have they set the fire in When this came

vers mie nuit et les nes furent bien esprises, si ventoit

toward mid night and the ships were well afire so it-blew

mout durement, si laissent li Griu illueques ches nes toutes

very hard so let the Greeks there these ships all

ardans pour ardoir le navie as Francois, et li vens les
burning for to-burn the navy of-the French and the wind them
 acachoit grant aleure vers le navie. Quant s'aperchoivent
drove great pace toward the navy When themselves-perceive
 li Venicien, si salent sus, si entrèrent en barges et en
the Venetians so leap up so entered into barges and into
 galies, si fissent tant que onques le grace Dieu leur navies
galleys so did so-much that ever the grace (of-)God their navy
 n'en eut garde. Ne demora mie après plus de quinze
not-thereof had fear Not delayed at-all afterward more than fifteen
 jours que li Griu refisent autretel; et quant li Venicien les
days that the Greeks did-again the-same and when the Venetians them
 raperchurent, si ralerent encontre et deffendirent molt bien
perceived-again so went-again against and defended very well
 leur navie de chu fu, si que onques le grace Dieu n'en
their navy from this fire so that ever the grace (of-)God not-thereof
 eurent warde, fors une nes markaande qui lueques estoit
had fear except a ship merchant which there was
 venue: chele fu arse. Et le kiertés estoit si grans en l'ost
come that was burned And the dearth was so great in the-host
 que on i vendoit un sestier de vin .xij. saus, .xiiij. saus,
that one there sold a setier of wine twelve sous fourteen sous
 .xv. saus tele eure fu, et une geline .xx. saus, et un oef.
fifteen sous such hour was and a hen twenty sous and an egg
 .ij. deniers; mais du bescuit n'i avoit il mie tele kierté,
two pence but of-the biscuit not-there had it at-all such dearth
 ains en avoient auques a leur ost maintenir une pieche.
but thereof they-had somewhat to their host maintain a while

- 61 Entrementiers qu'il sejoirnoient illuec l'iver, si se
Meanwhile that-they sojourned there the-winter so themselves
 warnirent molt bien chil de le chité et fissent leur mur
furnished very well those of the city and had their wall

rehauchier et leur tours, et fissent faire par deseure les tors
raised-higher and their towers and had made right above the towers
 de pierre boines tors de fust, et fissent ches tors de fust bien
of stone good towers of wood and had these towers of wood well
 hourder par dehors de boines ais, et bien couvrir par deseure
timbered on outside with good planks and well covered right above
 de boins cuirs, si qu'il n'eussent warde des esquieles des
with good hides so that-they not-should-have fear of-the ladders of-the
 nes as Veniciens; et avoient bien li mur soisante piés de haut
ships of-the Venetians and had well the walls sixty feet of height
 et les tors chent. Et fissent bien quarante perrieres rengier par
and the towers hundred And had well forty petraries ranged by
 dedens le chité de kief en kief les murs, en chel endroit
within the city from end to end (of-)the walls in that place
 ou on cuidoit que on assausit, et ne fu mie merveille se
where one thought that one would-assail and not was at-all wonder if
 il fissent chou, car molt en eurent grant loisir. Entre ches
they did this for much thereof they-had great leisure Between these
 entrefaites li Griu, li traître l'empereur et Morchoffles que
doings the Greeks the traitors (of-)the-emperor and Murzuphlus whom
 li empereres avoit geté de prison, s'asanlerent un jor et
the emperor had cast from prison themselves-assembled one day and
 pourparlerent une grant traïson, qu'il voloient autre empereur
plotted a great treason that-they wished other emperor
 de chelui faire, qui les delivrast des Francois, car
of him to-make who them should-deliver from-the French for
 Alexes ne leur sanloit mie boins; tant que Morchoffles dist:
Alexius not to-them seemed at-all good so-far that Murzuphlus said
 «Se vous me voliés», fist il, «croire, et vous me voliés faire
If you me wished said he to-believe and you me wished to-make
 empereur, je vous deliverroie si bien des Francois et de
emperor I you would-deliver so well from-the French and from

l'empereur que jamais warde n'en ariés.» Et il disent
the-emperor that ever fear not-thereof you-would-have And they said
 que s'il les en pooit delivrer, qu'il le feroient empereur,
that if-he them thereof could deliver that-they him would-make emperor
 et Morchoffles leur creanta qu'il les en deliverroit dedens
and Murzuphlus to-them promised that-he them thereof would-deliver within
 uit jours; et il li otriierent qu'il le feroient empereur.
eight days and they to-him granted that-they him would-make emperor

Murzuphlus

XIX

Murzuphlus has Alexius and his father strangled and is crowned. When he orders the barons out of his land within eight days, they defy him for murdering his lord. John the Vlach, once keeper of the emperor's stud, whom a eunuch struck across the face, offers a hundred thousand men if they will crown him king. Robert describes his Cumans, who neither plow nor sow. The barons answer John with scorn, which he makes them pay for dearly, and a cardinal from Rome crowns him.

- 62 Adont ala Morchoffles, ne s'evlia mie; si prist serjans avec
Then went Murzuphlus not himself-forgot at-all so took sergeants with
 lui; si s'en entra par nuit en le cambre ou ses sires li
him so himself-thence entered by night into the chamber where his lord the
 empereres, qui le geta de prison, se dormoit, si li fist
emperor who him cast from prison himself slept so on-him had
 lachier une corde u col, si le fist estranler et sen pere
laced a cord on-the neck so him had strangled and his father
 Kyrsaac ausi. Quant il eut chou fait, si vint ariere a chiaus
Kyrzac also When he had this done so came back to those
 qui le devoient faire empereur, si leur dist; et chil alerent,
who him were-to make emperor so to-them said and those went

si le coronerent et s'en fissent empereur. Quant Morchoffles
so him crowned and so-thereof made emperor When Murzuphlus
 fu empereres, si s'en ala le nouvele par le chité: «K'est,
was emperor so itself-thence went the news through the city What-is
 que n'est, par foi! Morchoffles est empereres, s'a sen seigneur
what not-is by faith Murzuphlus is emperor so-has his lord
 mordri.» Après on traist de le chité unes letres en l'ost
murdered Afterward one shot from the city some letters into the-host
 as pelerins, qui disoient que Morchoffles avoit ensi ouvré.
of-the pilgrims which said that Murzuphlus had thus wrought
 Quant li baron le seurent, si dist aucuns que dehait eust
When the barons it knew so said some that ill-luck should-have
 qui en caloit de chou que Alexes estoit mors, pour chou
who thereof cared of this that Alexius was dead for this
 qu'il ne vaut les couvenenches as pelerins tenir. Li autre
that-he not wished the covenants to-the pilgrims to-keep The others
 disent qu'il leur en pesoit qu'il avoit esté si faitement
said that-it to-them thereof weighed that-he had been in-such wise
 mors. Après ne demora mie graument quant Morchoffles
killed Afterward not delayed at-all greatly when Murzuphlus
 manda au conte de Flandres, au conte Loeis, au marchis
sent-word to-the count of Flanders to-the count Louis to-the marquiss
 et a tous les autres haus barons, qu'il s'en alaissent
and to all the other high barons that-they themselves-thence should-go
 et que il widaissent se tere, et que bien seussent il qu'il
and that they should-quit his land and that well should-know they that-he
 estoit empereres et que s'il les i ataignoit dedens uit
was emperor and that if-be them there overtook within eight
 jours, qu'il les ochirroit tous. Quant li baron oïrent chou
days that-be them would-kill all When the barons heard this
 que Morchoffles leur avoit mandé, si respondirent: «Qui?»
that Murzuphlus to-them had sent-word so answered What

fisent il, «chis qui sen seigneur a mordri par nuit en
said they this-one who his lord has murdered by night in
 traïson si nous a mandé chou?» Se li manderent ariere
treason so to-us has sent-word this So to-him sent-word back
 que ore le desfioient il et qu'il se gardast d'aus,
that now him defied they and that-he himself should-guard from-them
 et que il n'en partiroient du siege, s'aroient
and that they not-thence would-depart from-the siege till-they-would-have
 chelui vengié que il avoit mordri et si raroient pris
him avenged whom he had murdered and so would-have-again taken
 autre fois Coustantinoble et si raroient tout pleinement
other time Constantinople and so would-have-again all fully
 les convenenches que Alexes leur avoit en convent.
the covenants that Alexius to-them had in covenant

63 Quant Morchoffles oï chou, si kemanda que on wardast
When Murzuphlus heard this so commanded that one should-guard
 molt bien les murs et les tours et les hordast on, si
very well the walls and the towers and them should-timber one so
 que il n'eussent garde des assaus as Franchois; et il
that they not-should-have fear of-the assaults of-the French and they
 si fisent molt bien, si que li mur et les tours furent
so did very well so that the walls and the towers were
 plus fors et plus desfensauvles que devant.
more strong and more defensible than before

64 Il avint après, en chu tempore que Morchoffles li traïtres fu
It happened afterward in this time that Murzuphlus the traitor was
 empereres et que l'os des Franchois estoit si povre com jou
emperor and that the-host of-the French was so poor as I
 vous ai par devant dit, et qu'il ratornoient durement leur
to-you have just before said and that-they re-equipped hard their
 nes et leur engiens pour assalir, que Jehans li Blakis manda
ships and their engines for to-assail that John the Vlach sent-word

as haus barons de l'ost que se il le voloient coroner a
to-the high barons of the-host that if they him wished to-crown as
 roi a estre sires de se tere de Blakie, que il tenroit se tere
king to be lord of his land of Wallachia that he would-hold his land
 et sen roiaume d'aus, et qu'il venroit en leur aiwe pour
and his kingdom of-them and that-he would-come in their aid for
 aidier a prendre Coustantinoble a tout .c.m. hommes
to-help to take Constantinople with all hundred-thousand men
 a armes. Or est Blakie une tere qui est du demaine
at arms Now is Wallachia a land which is of-the domain
 l'empereur, et estoit chus Jehans uns serjans l'empereur qui
(of-)the-emperor and was this John a sergeant (of-)the-emperor who
 wardoit une huiriere l'empereur; si que quant li empereres
guarded a stud (of-)the-emperor so that when the emperor
 mandoit soisante chevaus ou chent, que chis Jehans li
sent-for sixty horses or hundred that this John to-him
 envoioit et venoit a court cascun an devant chou qu'il fust
sent and came to court each year before this that-he was
 par mal de le court, et tant qu'il i vint a un jour et
on ill with the court and so-far that-he there came on a day and
 que uns escouillés, uns des uissiers l'empereur, li fist un
that a eunuch one of-the ushers (of-)the-emperor to-him did a
 lait fait, qu'il le feri d'unes corgies par mi le vissage,
foul deed for-he him struck with-a whip through the-midst-of the face
 dont il eut molt grant duel. Et pour chu lait fait que on
whereof he had very great grief And for this foul deed that one
 li fist, si s'en parti Jehans li Blakis par mautalent
to-him did so himself-thence departed John the Vlach in anger
 de le court, et s'en rala en Blakie. Si est Blakie
from the court and himself-thence went-back into Wallachia So is Wallachia

une molt fort tere qui toute est enclose d'unes montaingnes,

a very strong land which all is enclosed by-some mountains

si que on n'i puet entrer ne issir fors par un destroit.

so that one not-there can enter nor go-out except by a pass

65 Quant Jehans fu venus, si commenche a atraire les haus

When John was come so begins to attract the high

homes de Blakie, comme chis qui estoit rikes hons et qui

men of Wallachia as one who was rich man and who

auques pooir i avoit, si leur commenche a prumetre et

somewhat power there had so to-them begins to promise and

a douner et as uns et as autres, et fist tant que

to give both to-the ones and to-the others and did so-much that

tout chil du païs furent tot sujet a lui, et tant que

all those of-the country were all subject to him and so-far that

il fu sires d'aus. Quant il fu sires d'aus, si traist il as

he was lord of-them When he was lord of-them so drew he to-the

Commains, si fait il tant, que par un que par el, qu'il fu

Cumans so does he so-much that by one or by else that-he was

leur amis et que il furent tot en s'aiwe et que il fu ansi

their friend and that they were all in his-aid and that he was as

comme tous sires d'aus. Or est Commaine une tere qui

it-were all lord of-them Now is Cumania a land which

marchist a Blakie; si vous dirai quel gent chil Commain

borders on Wallachia so to-you I-will-tell what people those Cumans

sont. Che sont une gent sauvage qui ne erent ne ne

are These are a people savage who not plow nor not

semment, ne n'ont borde ne maison, ains ont unes tentes

sow nor not-have but nor house but have some tents

de feutre, uns habitacles ou il se muchent, et se

of felt some dwellings where they themselves hide and themselves

vivent de lait et de formage et de char. Si y a en

live on milk and on cheese and on flesh So there has in

esté tant de mouskes et de mouskerons que il n'osent
summer so-many of flies and of gnats that they not-dare
 issir hors de leur tentes waire preu devant en l'iver. En
go-out out of their tents much at-all before in the-winter In
 yver si issent hors de leur tentes et de leur païs, quant
winter so go-out out of their tents and of their country when
 il voellent faire leur chevauchie. Si vous dirons que il
they wish to-make their raid So to-you we-will-tell what they
 font. Cascuns d'aus a bien dis chevax ou douze; si les ont
do Each of-them has well ten horses or twelve so them have
 si duis qu'il les sivent partout la ou il les voellent
so trained that-they them follow everywhere there where they them wish
 mener, si montent puis seur l'un et puis seur l'autre. Si
to-lead so mount then on the-one and then on the-other So
 a cascuns des chevax, quant il oirrent, un sakelet pendu
has each of-the horses when they journey a little-sack hung
 au musel la ou se viande est; si menjue si comme il
at-the muzzle there where its fodder is so eats so as it
 siut sen maistre, ne ne cessent d'esrer et par nuit et
follows its master nor not cease of-journeying both by night and
 par jour. Si vont si durement que il vont bien en une
by day So go so hard that they go well in one
 nuit et en un jor sis journees ou set ou uit d'esrure.
night and in one day six days or seven or eight of-journeying
 Ne ja tant comme il vont, riens ne carkeront ne ne
Nor ever so-long as they go anything not will-load nor not
 prenderont devant au repairier; mais quant il repairent,
will-take before at-the returning but when they return
 dont si acuellent proies, si prennent hommes, si prenent
then so seize booty so take men so take
 chou qu'il pueent ataindre; ne ja n'iront autrement armé
this that-they can reach nor ever not-will-go otherwise armed

fors qu'il ont unes vesteures de piex de mouton et
except that-they have some garments of skins of sheep and
 portent ars et saietes avec aus; ne ne croient autrement
bear bows and arrows with them nor not believe otherwise
 fors en le premiere beste qu'il encontrent le matinee, et
except in the first beast that-they meet the morning and
 chis qu'il l'encontre, si i croit toute jour quele beste che
he who it-meets so in-it believes all day whatever beast it
 soit. Ichés Commains avoit Jehans li Blakis en s'aiwe et
be These Cumans had John the Vlach in his-aid and
 venoit cascun an preer le tere l'empereur dusk' a meesme
came each year to-plunder the land (of-)the-emperor as-far to hand
 de Coustantinoble, ne n'avoit li empereres tant de pooir
of Constantinople nor not-had the emperor so-much of power
 qu'il s'en peust deffendre. Quant li baron de l'ost
that-he himself-therefrom could defend When the barons of the-host
 seurent chou que Jehans li Blakis leur mandoit, si disent
knew this that John the Vlach to-them sent-word so said
 qu'il s'en conselleroient; et quant il se furent
that-they themselves-thereof would-counsel and when they themselves were
 consellié, si eurent malvais conseil, si respondirent que ne
counseled so had bad counsel so answered that neither
 de lui ne de s'aiwe n'avoient il cure, mais bien seust il
of him nor of his-aid not-had they care but well should-know he
 que il le greveroient et que il mal li feroient s'il
that they him would-harm and that they evil to-him would-do if-they
 pooient, et il leur vendi puis molt kier. Che fu molt
could and he to-them sold then very dear This was very
 grand deus et molt grans damages. Et quant il eut fali a
great grief and very great harm And when he had failed with

aus, si envoie a Rome pour se corone, et li apostoiles y
them so sent to Rome for his crown and the pope there
 envia un cardounal pour lui coroner: si fu coronés a roi.
sent a cardinal for him to-crown so was crowned as king

Philea and the Icon

XX

Henry of Flanders raids the rich city of Philea with thirty knights. Murzuphlus ambushes him on the way back, carrying the icon of Our Lady whose bearer cannot be defeated, but the French stand, fight with knives and daggers, and rout him, taking the icon, the ensign, and his imperial bat. The bishops receive the icon in procession, and it is promised to Cîteaux. When Murzuphlus claims a victory, the French row icon and ensign along the walls, and the shamed emperor vows revenge.

Or vous dirons d'une autre aventure qu'il avint a mon 66
Now to-you we-will-tell of-an other adventure that-it happened to my
 seigneur Henri, le frere le conte de Flandres. Entre ches
lord Henry the brother (of-)the count of Flanders Between these
 entrefaites que li Francois avoient assis Coustantinoble, il
doings that the French had besieged Constantinople it
 avint que mesires Henris, et il et chil de se compaignie,
happened that my-lord Henry both he and those of his company
 n'estoient mie molt rike, ains avoient bien mestier et de
not-were at-all very rich but had well need both of
 viandes et d'autres coses, tant que on endita une chité,
victimals and of-other things so-far that one pointed-out a city
 la Filee avoit a non, a dis liwes loins de l'ost. Ichele
the Philea had as name at ten leagues far from the-host That
 chités estoit molt rike et molt plentive; si ne fist mais
city was very rich and very plentiful so not did more

el mesires Henri, si atorna son oirre et s'en parti
else my-lord Henry so prepared his journey and himself-thence departed
 de l'ost a chelee par nuit, li trentisme de chevaliers et
from the-host in secret by night the thirtieth of knights and
 assés serjans a cheval avec lui, que waires de gens ne
plenty sergeants on horse with him so-that much of people not
 le seurent. Quant il vint a le chité, si fist sen fait, si i
it knew When he came to the city so did his deed so there
 sejorna un jor; et entrementiers que il i ala, si fu espies
sojourned one day and meanwhile that he there went so was spied
 et endités a Morchofle. Quant Morchofles le seut, si fist
and pointed-out to Murzuphlus When Murzuphlus it knew so had
 monter bien dusques a .iiij.m. hommes a armes, et fist
mount well as-far to four-thousand men at arms and had
 porter l'ansconne avec lui, un ymage de Nostre Dame que
carried the-icon with him an image of Our Lady that
 li Griu apeloient ensi, que li empereur portent avec aus
the Greeks called thus which the emperors carry with them
 quant il vont en bataille; et si grant fianche ont en chel
when they go into battle and so great trust have in that
 ansconne que il croient bien que nus qui le port en
icon that they believe well that anyone who it carries in
 bataille ne puet estre desfis, et pour chou que Morchofles
battle not can be defeated and for this that Murzuphlus
 ne le portoit mie a droit, creons nous qu'il fu desconfis.
not it carried at-all by right believe we that-he was routed
 Et li Franchois avoient ja leur gaaing envoie a l'ost;
And the French had already their gain sent to the-host
 si les waita Morchofles au repairier, et quand il vint
so them watched-for Murzuphlus at-the returning and when he came
 a une liwe pres de nos gens, si mist ses gens en await
at a league near of our people so put his people in ambush

et fist ses embuskemens et nos gens n'en seurent mot,
and made his ambushes and our people not-thereof knew word
 si s'en revenoient durement ne ne seurent mot de
so themselves-thence came-back hard nor not knew word of
 chel await. Quant li Griu les virent, si s'escrierent, et
that ambush When the Greeks them saw so cried-out and
 nos Franchois se regarderent. Quant il les virrent, si
our French themselves looked-round When they them saw so
 eurent molt grant peur, et molt commenchieient a reclamer
had very great fear and much began to call-upon
 Damedieu et Nostre Dame, et furent si esmari qu'il ne
Lord-God and Our Lady and were so dismayed that-they not
 se seurent consellier, et tant qu'il disent entr'aus:
themselves knew-how-to counsel and so-far that-they said among-themselves
 «Par foi! se nous fuions, nous sommes tout mort; miex
By faith if we flee we are all dead better
 nous vient morir en desfendant que en fuiant.» Adont si
to-us comes to-die in defending than in fleeing Then so
 s'arestèrent tout coi; et prisent entour uit arbalestiers que
themselves-halted all still and took about eight crossbowmen that
 il avoient, si les misent devant aus; et li empereres
they had so them put before them and the emperor
 Morchoffles li traîtres et li Griu leur viennent molt tres
Murzuphlus the traitor and the Greeks at-them come very very
 grant aleure, si se fierent en aus mout radement, mais
great pace so themselves strike into them very swiftly but
 onques nul des Franchois, le merchi Dieu, ne misent a
ever anyone of-the French the mercy (of-)God not they-put on
 pié. Quant li Franchois virent que li Griu leur couroient
foot When the French saw that the Greeks on-them ran
 si sus de toutes pars, si laissierent les lanches caïr jus, si
so upon from all sides so let the lances fall down so

traient coustiaus et misericordes qu'il avoient, si s'acueillent
draw knives and daggers that-they had so themselves-set
 a desfendre molt vigeureusement, si en ochient mout.

to defend very vigorously so of-them kill many

Quant li Griu virent que li Francois les desconfissoient

When the Greeks saw that the French them routed

si, si se commencent il a esmaier, si tornent il

so so themselves begin they to dismay so turn they

en fuies. Et nos Francois les acueillent, si en ochisent

in flight And our French them set-upon so of-them killed

molt, et molt en retinrent et mout y waaingnierent; et

many and many of-them kept and much there gained and

cachierent l'empereur Morchofle largement demie liwe, qu'il

chased the-emperor Murzupblus fully half league for-they

le cuidoient tous dis prendre, et si le hasterent et lui et

him thought all days to-take and so him pressed both him and

chiaux de se compaingnie que il laierent caïr l'ansconne et

those of his company that they let fall the-icon and

sen capel emperial et l'ensengne et l'ansconne, qui toute

his hat imperial and the-ensign and the-icon which all

estoit d'or et toute carkie de rikes pierres precieuses, et

was of-gold and all laden with rich stones precious and

estoit si bele et si rike que onques si bele ne si rike ne fu

was so fair and so rich that ever so fair nor so rich not was

veue. Quant li Francois le virent, si laiserent leur cache,

seen When the French it saw so left-off their chase

si furent molt lié durement, si prisent l'image, si l'en

so were very glad greatly so took the-image so it-thence

aportèrent a molt grant goie et molt grant feste. Et

brought with very great joy and very great feast And

endementiers qu'il se conbatoient, virrent noveles a

meanwhile that-they themselves fought came news to

l'ost qu'il estoient encontre des Griens; et quant chil de
the-host that-they were encountered by-the Greeks and when those of
 l'ost oïrent les nouvelles, si s'armerent et poincent encontre
the-host heard the news so themselves-armed and spurred to-meet
 seigneur Henri pour lui secorre. Et quant il vinrent la, si
lord Henry for him to-succor And when they came there so
 s'en estoient ja li Griens fui, et nos Franchois en
themselves-thence were already the Greeks fled and our French thence
 amenoient leur waaing, et l'ansconne en apportoient, qui si
were-bringing their gain and the-icon thence carried which so
 estoit bele et rike com je vous ai dit; et quant il vinrent
was fair and rich as I to-you have said and when they came
 pres de l'ost, si alerent li vesque et li clerc, qui en l'ost
near of the-host so went the bishops and the clerks who in the-host
 estoient, a pourcession encontre aus, et rechurent l'ansconne
were in procession to-meet them and received the-icon
 a grant goie et a grant feste, et le balla on au
with great joy and with great feast and it delivered one to-the
 vesque de Troies; si l'emporta li vesques en l'ost, a une
bishop of Troyes so it-carried-off the bishop in the-host to a
 eglise ou il repairoient, et canterent li vesque, et fisent
church where they resorted and sang the bishops and made
 ent molt grant feste, et tres chu jour qu'ele fu conquise,
thereof very great feast and from this day that-it was won
 otrièrent tout li baron que ele seroit donnée a Chistiax,
granted all the barons that it would-be given to Cîteaux
 et puis i fu ele portee. Et quant Morchoffles vint ariere
and then there was it carried And when Murzuphlus came back
 en Coustantinoble, si fist acroire qu'il avoit desbareté et
into Constantinople so made believe that-he had worsted and
 desconfit seigneur Henri et se gent, et demandoient aucun
routed lord Henry and his people and asked some

des Grius tot belement: «Ou est l'ansconne et l'enseingne?»

of-the Greeks all quietly Where is the-icon and the-ensign

Et li autre disoient que on avoit tout mis en sauf. Tant

And the others said that one had all put in safety So-far

alerent ches nouveles amont et aval que li Francois seurent

went these news up and down that the French knew

k'ensi faitement avoit fait Morchoffles acroire qu'il avoit les

that-thus wise had made Murzuphlus believe that-he had the

Franchois desconfis; et li Francois ne fissent mais el, si font

French routed and the French not did more else so have

il armer une galie et fissent prendre l'ansconne et lever

they armed a galley and had taken the-icon and raised

bien haut en le galie, et l'enseingne de l'empire, et fissent

well high in the galley and the-ensign of the-empire and had

nagier chele galie a tout l'ansconne et a tout l'enseingne

rowed that galley with all the-icon and with all the-ensign

de kief en kief les murs, si que chil qui a murs estoient

from end to end (of-)the walls so that those who on walls were

et molt de gent de le chité le virent et le connurent

and many of people of the city it saw and it knew

bien que ch'estoit l'enseingne et l'ansconne l'empereur.

well that this-was the-ensign and the-icon (of-)the-emperor

67 Quant li Griu virent chou, si viennent a Morchofle, si

When the Greeks saw this so come to Murzuphlus so

l'acueillent mout a hounir et a blasmer de chou qu'il avoit

him-set-about much to shame and to blame of this that-he had

l'enseingne de l'empire et l'ansconne perdue et de chou qu'i

the-ensign of the-empire and the-icon lost and of this that-he

leur avoit fait acroire qu'il avoit les Francois desconfis; et

to-them had made believe that-he had the French routed and

quant Morchoffles oï chou, si se rescoust le plus belement

when Murzuphlus heard this so himself excused the most handsomely

qu'il peut, si commencha a dire: «Or ne vous esmaïés mie,
that-be could so began to say Now not yourselves dismay at-all
 car je leur vendrai molt kier et molt bien me vengerai d'aus!»
for I to-them will-sell very dear and very well myself will-avenge of-them

The Pact and the First Assault

XXI

The French and the Venetians agree that ten electors from each side will choose an emperor, who will hold a quarter of the empire, and they swear to bring all booty to the common store and to spare women and churches. After Christmas they rebuild their bridges and cover the ships against the petraries. Ten days before Palm Sunday they assault, but stones smash their engines, and the Greeks bare their backsides on the walls while Murzuphlus boasts.

Aprés avint que tout li Francois et tot li Venicien 68
Afterward happened that all the French and all the Venetians
 s'asanlerent pour prendre conseil entr'aus, comment il
themselves-assembled for to-take counsel among-themselves how they
 ouverroient et que il feroient, et de qui il porroient
would-work and what they would-do and of whom they could
 faire empereur, s'il avoient le chité prise, tant qu'il
make emperor if-they had the city taken so-far that-they
 esgarderent entr'aus que on prendroit dis Francois des
decided among-themselves that one would-take ten French of-the
 plus preudommes de l'ost et dis Venicien ensemment des
most worthy-men of the-host and ten Venetians likewise of-the
 plus preudommes que on i saroit; et chou que chil vint
most worthy-men that one there would-know and this that those twenty
 en atierroient seroit tenu, et par si que se li empereres
thereof would-arrange would-be held and on such that if the emperor

estoit des Francois que li patriarches seroit des Veniciens.

were of-the French that the patriarch would-be of-the Venetians

Et atira on que chis qui seroit empereres aroit le

And arranged one that he who would-be emperor would-have the

quarte partie de l'empire et le quarte part de la cité en

fourth part of the-empire and the fourth part of the city in

sen demaine et les autres trois parties partiroit on si que

his domain and the other three parts would-divide one so that

li Venicien en aroient le moitié et li pelerin l'autre, et

the Venetians thereof would-have the half and the pilgrims the-other and

tout tenroit on de l'empereur. Quant il eurent tout chou

all would-hold one of the-emperor When they had all this

atiré, après si fist on jurer seur sains a tous chiaus de

arranged afterward so had one swear on relics to all those of

l'ost que les waains d'or et d'argent et de neuf drap, a le

the-host that the gains of-gold and of-silver and of new cloth at the

vaillanche de chinc sols et de plus, aporteroient tout a l'ost

value of five sous and of more they-would-bring all to the-host

a droite partie hors euxtius et viande, et que il a femme

to rightful division except stores and victuals and that they to woman

forche ne feroient ne ne despoullieroient de drap que ele

force not would-do nor not would-strip of cloth that she

eust vestu, car qui en esteroit atains il seroit destruis. Et

had worn for who thereof would-be convicted he would-be destroyed And

se leur fist on jurer seur sains que il main ne meteroient

so them had one swear on relics that they hand not would-put

seur moine, ne seur clerc, ne seur prestre, s'il n'estoit en

on monk nor on clerk nor on priest if-be not-were in

desfense, ne qu'il ne froisseroient eglise ne moustier.

defense nor that-they not would-break church nor minster

Après, quant tout chou fu fait, si fu li Noeux passés, si 69

Afterward when all this was done so was the Christmas passed so
 fu pres de l'entree du Quaresme, et li Venicien et li
it-was near of the-entrance of-the Lent and the Venetians and the
 Franchois se rapareillierent et ratornerent leur nes; si
French themselves prepared-again and re-equipped their ships so
 fisent le Venicien refaire les pons de leur nes, et li Franchois
had the Venetians remade the bridges of their ships and the French
 fisent faire uns autres engiens que on apeloit cas et carchloies
had made some other engines that one called cats and burdles
 et truis pour miner as murs; et prisent li Venicien
and sows for to-mine at-the walls and took the Venetians
 marien de maisons, s'en couvrent leur nes, si qu'il
timber of houses so-therewith covered their ships so that-they
 jounoient le marien, et après prisent sarment de vigne, si
joined the timber and afterward took shoots of vine so
 en couvrent le marien, que les perrieres ne peussent
therewith covered the timber so-that the petreries not could
 confondre ne despichier leur nes. Et li Griu renforchierent
confound nor smash their ships And the Greeks strengthened
 molt durement leur chité par dedens, et fisent molt bien
very greatly their city by within and had very well
 couvrir de boins cuirs par dehors les breteskes qui estoient
covered with good hides on outside the brattices which were
 par deseur les tours de pierre, ne n'i avoit brestesque
right above the towers of stone nor not-there had brattice
 ou il n'eust set estages ou sis ou chinc au mains.
where it not-had seven stories or six or five at-the least

Après avint par un devenres, entor dis jours devant Pasques 70

Afterward happened on a Friday about ten days before Easter
 flouries, que li pelerin et li Venicien eurent leur nes et leur
flowery that the pilgrims and the Venetians had their ships and their

engiens atornés et qu'il s'apareilloient d'assalir. Si arengierent
engines equipped and that-they themselves-prepared to-assail So ranged
 leur nes l'une en coste l'autre, et li Franchois fisent carkier
their ships the-one by side the-other and the French had loaded
 leur engiens en barges et en galies, et se misent a
their engines in barges and in galleys and themselves put to
 le voie a aler vers le chité, et duroit bien li navies une
the way to go toward the city and extended well the navy a
 grandesme liwe de front; et estoient tout li pelerin et li
very-great league of front and were all the pilgrims and the
 Venicien molt bien armé. Si avoit un monchiel dedens le
Venetians very well armed So there-had a billock within the
 chité, en chel endroit ou on devoit assalir, que on pooit bien
city in that place where one was-to assail that one could well
 veir des nes par deseur les murs, si estoit il haus; et en
see from-the ships right above the walls so was it high and on
 chel monchel estoit venus Morchofles li traîtres, li empereres,
that billock was come Murzuphlus the traitor the emperor
 et de se gent avec lui; si i avoit fait tendre ses vermeilles
and of his people with him so there he-had had pitched his vermilion
 tendes, et faisoit ses buisines d'argent sonner et ses timbres,
tents and had his trumpets of-silver sounded and his timbrels
 et faisoit molt grant beubant, si que li pelerin le pooient
and made very great display so that the pilgrims him could
 bien veir, et Morchofles pooit bien veir es nes as pelerins.
well see and Murzuphlus could well see into-the ships of-the pilgrims

71 Quant li navies dut ariver, si prisent boins caavles, si
When the navy was-to land so took good cables so
 traissent leur nes au plus pres k'il peurent des murs,
drew their ships at-the most near that-they could to-the walls
 si fisent li Franchois leur engiens drechier, leur cas, leur
so had the French their engines raised their cats their

carcloies et leur truis pour miner as murs; et li Venicien
burdles and their sows for to-mine at-the walls and the Venetians
 monterent seur les pons de leur nes et assalirent durement
mounted on the bridges of their ships and assailed hard
 as murs; et li Francois assalirent ensement par leur
at-the walls and the French assailed likewise by their
 engiens. Quant li Griu virent que li Francois les assaloient
engines When the Greeks saw that the French them assailed
 si, si destendent a geter grandesme quarriaus seur ches
so so dash to throw very-great blocks on these
 engiens as Francois si grans que trop; si commencent
engines of-the French so great that exceedingly so begin
 a craventer et a despechier et a esmier tous ches engiens,
to crush and to smash and to crumble all these engines
 si que onques nus n'osa demorer dedens ne desous ches
so that ever anyone not-dared remain within nor beneath these
 engiens, ne li Venicien d'autre part ne peurent avenir as
engines nor the Venetians on-other side not could reach to-the
 murs ne as tours, si erent eles hautes; ne onques chu
walls nor to-the towers so were they high nor ever this
 jour li Venicien ne li Francois riens ne peurent forfaire
day the Venetians nor the French anything not could do-harm
 ne as murs ne a le chité. Quant il virent qu'il n'i
neither to-the walls nor to the city When they saw that-they not-there
 peurent nient forfaire, si furent molt dolent, si se traient
could anything do-harm so were very sorrowful so themselves drew
 arriere; quant li Griu les virent traire ariere, si s'acueillent a
back when the Greeks them saw draw back so themselves-set to
 huer et a escrier si durement que trop, et monterent seur
boot and to shout so hard that exceedingly and mounted on
 les murs et avaloient leur braies et moustroient leur leurs
the walls and lowered their breeches and showed to-them their

cus. Quant Morchoffles vit que li pelerin furent retorné, si
asses When Murzuphlus saw that the pilgrims were returned so
 akeut a faire sonner ses buisines et timbres et a faire un si
sets to have sounded his trumpets and timbrels and to make a so
 grant beubant que trop, et manda se gent et commencha
great display that exceedingly and summoned his people and began
 a dire: «Veés, seigneur, sui je boins empereres? Onques mais
to say See lords am I good emperor Ever before
 n'eustes vous si boin empereur. Ai le jou bien fait? Nous
not-had you so good emperor Have it I well done We
 n'avons mais warde; je les ferai tous pendre et tous hounir.»
not-have more fear I them will-have all hanged and all shamed

The Second Assault

XXII

The bishops declare the war just, since the Greeks have left the law of Rome and murdered their lord, and send the loose women away. On Monday the sea drives the bishop of Soissons's ship against a tower; a Venetian who climbs in is cut down, but Andrew of Dureboise clears it, and Peter of Bracieux's ship takes a second.

- 72 Quant li pelerin virent chou, si furent molt corchié et molt
When the pilgrims saw this so were very angered and very
 dolent, si s'en revinrent ariere d'autre part du port
sorrowful so themselves-thence came-back back on-other side of-the port
 a leur herbeges. Quant li baron furent revenu et il furent
to their lodgings When the barons were returned and they were
 descendu des nes, si s'asanlerent et furent molt abaubi et
come-down from-the ships so themselves-assembled and were very astounded and
 disent que ch'estoit par pechié qu'il riens ne pooient faire
said that this-was by sin that-they anything not could do

ne forfaire a le chité; tant que li vesque et li clerc de l'ost
nor harm to the city so-far that the bishops and the clerks of the-host
 parlerent ensanle, et jugierent que le bataille estoit droituriere
spoke together and judged that the battle was rightful
 et que les devoit bien assalir, car anchienement avoient esté
and that them one-ought well assail for anciently had been
 chil de le chité obedient a le loi de Rome, et ore en estoient
those of the city obedient to the law of Rome and now thereof were
 inobedient, quant il disoient que li lois de Romme ne valoit
disobedient when they said that the law of Rome not was-worth
 nient, et disoient que tout chil qui i crooient estoient chien;
anything and said that all those who therein believed were dogs
 et disent li vesque que par tant les devoit on bien assalir
and said the bishops that by that them ought one well assail
 et que che n'estoit mie pechiés, ains estoit grans aumosnes.
and that this not-was at-all sin but was great almsgiving
 Adont cria on par l'ost que tot venissent au sarmon, et 73
Then cried one through the-host that all should-come to-the sermon both
 Venicien et un et autre, le diemenche par matin, et il si
Venetians and one and other the Sunday in morning and they so
 fisent. Adonc sarmonnerent li vesque par l'ost, li vesques
did Then preached the bishops through the-host the bishop
 de Sessions, li vesques de Troie, li veskes de Hanestaist,
of Soissons the bishop of Troyes the bishop of Halberstadt
 maistres Jehans Faicete et li abes de Los, et moustrerent
master John Faicete and the abbot of Loos and showed
 as pelerins que le bataille estoit droituriere, car il estoient
to-the pilgrims that the battle was rightful for they were
 traïteur et mordrisseur, et qu'il estoient desloial, quant
traitors and murderers and that-they were disloyal when
 il avoient leur seigneur droiturier mordri, et qu'il estoient
they had their lord rightful murdered and that-they were

pieur que Juis. Et disent li vesque qu'il assoloient de par
worse than Jews And said the bishops that-they absolved on behalf-of
 Dieu et de par l'apostoile tous chiaus qui les asaurroient,
God and on behalf-of the-pope all those who them would-assail
 et quemanderent li vesque as pelerins qu'il se
and commanded the bishops to-the pilgrims that-they themselves
 confessaissent et kemeniaissent tout molt bien, et qu'il ne
should-confess and should-commune all very well and that-they not
 doutaissent mie a assalir les Griens, car il estoient enemi
should-fear at-all to assail the Greeks for they were enemies
 Damedieu. Et quemanda on que on quesist et que on
(of-)Lord-God And commanded one that one should-seek and that one
 ostast toutes les foles femmes de l'ost et que on les
should-remove all the loose women from the-host and that one them
 envoiaist bien loin en sus de l'ost; et on si fist que on les
should-send well far away off from the-host and one so did that one them
 mist toutes en une nef, si les envia on bien loins de l'ost.
put all in a ship so them sent one well far from the-host

74 Après quant li vesque eurent preechié et moustré as
Afterward when the bishops had preached and shown to-the
 pelerins que le bataille estoit droituriere, si se confesserent
pilgrims that the battle was rightful so themselves confessed
 molt bien tout et furent kemenié. Quant che vint le
very well all and were communed When this came the
 deluns par matin, si s'atornerent molt bien tot li pelerin
Monday in morning so themselves-equipped very well all the pilgrims
 et s'armerent, et li Venicien, et refisent les pons de leurs
and themselves-armed and the Venetians and remade the bridges of their
 nes et leur uissiers et leur galies; si les arengierent
ships and their horse-transport and their galleys so them ranged
 coste a coste et se misent a le voie pour aler assalir;
side to side and themselves put to the way for to-go to-assail

et avoit li navies bien une grandesme liwe de front;
and had the navy well a very-great league of front
 et quant il furent arivé et il se furent trait au
and when they were arrived and they themselves were drawn at-the
 plus pres qu'il peurent des murs, si geterent ancras. Et
most near that-they could to-the walls so cast anchors And
 quant il furent a ancre, si commenchieurent durement a
when they were at anchor so began hard to
 assalir et a traire et a lanchier et a geter fu grijois as
assail and to shoot and to hurl and to throw fire Greek at-the
 tours; mais ne s'i pooit prendre li fus pour les cuirs
towers but not itself-there could take the fire for the hides
 dont eles erent couvertes. Et dedens se desfendoient
with-which they were covered And within themselves defended
 molt durement et faisoient bien geter soisante perrieres et
very hard and had well shot sixty petraries and
 getoient a cascun caup seur les nes; mais les nes estoient
threw at each shot on the ships but the ships were
 si bien couvertes de mairien et de sarment de vingne ker
so well covered with timber and of shoots of vine that
 ne leur faisoient mie grant mal, et estoient les pierres
not to-them did at-all great harm and were the stones
 si grans que uns hons n'en peust mie une lever de
so great that a man not-thereof could at-all one lift from
 se tere. Et Morchoffles li empereres estoit en sen monchel;
its ground And Murzuphlus the emperor was on his billock
 si faisoit ses buisines d'argent sonner et ses timbres, et
so had his trumpets of-silver sounded and his timbrels and
 faisoit molt grant beubant, et renheudissoit se gent, et
made very great display and heartened his people and
 disoit: «Alés la! alés cha!» et les renvoie la ou il veoit
said Go there go here and them sends there where he saw

que li graindes besoins estoit. Et n'avoit mie en tout le
that the greatest need was And not-there-had at-all in all the
 navie plus haut de quatre nes ou de chinc qu'il peussent
navy more high than four ships or than five that-they could
 avenir as tours, si erent eles hautes; et tout li estage
reach to-the towers so were they high and all the stories
 des tours de fust qui erent faites seur les tours de pierre,
of-the towers of wood which were made on the towers of stone
 dont il i avoit bien chinc ou sis ou set, et estoient
whereof it there had well five or six or seven and were
 toutes warnies de serjans qui les tors desfendoient. Et tant
all furnished with sergeants who the towers defended And so-long
 i assalirent que le nef le vesque de Sessons s'ahurta
there assailed that the ship (of-)the bishop of Soissons itself-struck
 a une de ches tors par miracle de Dieu, si comme le
against one of these towers by miracle of God so as the
 mers, qui onques n'est coie, le porta, et seur le pont de
sea which ever not-is still it bore and on the bridge of
 chele nef avoit un Venicien et deus chevaliers armés; si
that ship there-had a Venetian and two knights armed so
 comme le nef se fu ahurtee a chele tour, si se prent
as the ship itself was struck against that tower so himself takes
 li Veniciens a piés et a mains au miex qu'il peut, si
the Venetian with feet and with hands at-the best that-he could so
 fait tant qu'il fu ens. Quant il fu ens, et li serjant qui
does so-much that-he was in When he was in and the sergeants who
 estoient en chel estage, Encles, Danois, et Grius que il i
were in that story English Danes and Greeks that it there
 avoit, si wardent, si le voient, se li keurent il sus a
had so look so him see so on-him run they upon with
 haches et as espees, si le decauperent tout. Si comme
axes and with-the swords so him cut-to-pieces all So as

le mers reporta avant le nef, si se rahurta a chele
the sea bore-again forward the ship so itself struck-again against that
 tour; si comme ele s'i fu rahurtee, si ne fait mais
tower so as it itself-there was struck-again so not does more
 el li uns des deus chevaliers, Andriex de Dureboise avoit
else the one of-the two knights Andrew of Dureboise had
 a non, si se prent il a piés et as mains a chele
as name so himself takes he with feet and with-the hands to that
 breteske et fait tant qu'il se mist ens a genoullons.
brattice and does so-much that-he himself put in on knees
 Quant il fu laiens a genoullons, et chil li keurent il
When he was in-there on knees and those on-him run they
 sus a haches, as espees, si le ferirent durement; mais
upon with axes with-the swords so him struck hard but
 qu'il estoit armés, la grace Dieu, si ne le navrerent mie, si
that-he was armed the grace (of-)God so not him wounded at-all so
 comme Diex le wardoit qui ne voloit mie consentir qu'il
as God him guarded who not wished at-all consent that-they
 duraissent plus, ne que chil i morust mie. Ains voloit,
should-endure longer nor that that-one there should-die at-all But wished
 pour le traïson d'aus et pour le murdre que Morchoffles
for the treason of-them and for the murder that Murzupplus
 avoit fait et pour le desloiauté d'aus, que le chités fust
had done and for the disloyalty of-them that the city should-be
 prise et que il fussent tot honni, que li chevaliers fu en
taken and that they should-be all shamed so-that the knight was on
 piés, et quant il fu en piés, si traist s'espee. Quant chil le
feet and when he was on feet so drew his-sword When those him
 virrent en piés, si furent si esbahi et si eurent grant peur
saw on feet so were so dismayed and so had great fear
 qu'il s'en fuirent en l'autre estage desous. Quant chil
that-they themselves-thence fled into the-other story beneath When those

de l'autre estage virent que chil de deseure aus s'en
of the-other story saw that those of above them themselves-thence
 afuioient si, si rewidierent chelui estage, ne onques n'i
fled so so emptied-in-turn that story nor ever not-there
 oserent demourer; et li autres chevaliers i entra après,
dared remain and the other knight there entered after
 et si i entra assés gens après. Et quant il furent ens,
and so there entered plenty people after And when they were in
 si prenent boines cordes, si loient molt bien chele nef a le
so take good ropes so tie very well that ship to the
 tor, et quant il l'eurent loie, si i entrerent assés gent;
tower and when they it-bad tied so there entered plenty people
 et quant le mers reportoit le nef ariere, si branloit chele
and when the sea bore-again the ship back so shook that
 tors si durement que il sanloit bien que le nes le deust
tower so hard that it seemed well that the ship it should
 traire jus, si que par forche et par peur leur couvint le nef
drag down so that by force and by fear them behooved the ship
 desloier. Et quant chil des autres estages par desous virent
untie And when those of-the other stories by below saw
 que le tors emploie si des Francois, si eurent si grant
that the tower filled so with-the French so had so great
 peur que onques nus n'i osa demorer, ains widierent
fear that ever anyone not-there dared remain but emptied
 toute le tour. Et Morchoffles veoit bien tout chou, si
all the tower And Murzuphlus saw well all this so
 renheudissoit se gent et les envoioit la ou il veoit que
heartened his people and them sent there where he saw that
 li graindes assaus estoit. Entre ches entrefaites que chele
the greatest assault was Between these doings that that
 tours fu par tele miracle prise, si se rahurte le nes
tower was by such miracle taken so itself strikes-in-turn the ship

seigneur Pierrum de Braichoel a une autre tor; et quand
 (of-)lord Peter of Bracieux against an other tower and when
 ele s'i fu rahuntee, si commencent chil qui estoient
 it itself-there was struck-in-turn so begin those who were
 seur le pont de le nef a asalir durement a chele tour,
 on the bridge of the ship to assail hard at that tower
 et tant que, par miracle de Dieu, que chele tors fu prise.
 and so-far that by miracle of God that that tower was taken

Peter of Amiens and Aleaume of Clari

XXIII

Peter of Amiens lands with ten knights and sixty sergeants at a walled-up postern, and with them is the clerk Aleaume of Clari, whose feats only Peter of Bracieux surpassed. Under stones and boiling pitch they hack a hole, but the crowd beyond it daunts them. Aleaume crawls in though his brother Robert tries to pull him back by the foot, drives the Greeks before him with a knife, and calls Peter in. The Greeks abandon that stretch of wall, with Murzuphlus a stone's throw away.

Quant ches deus tors furent prises, et eles furent warnies 75
 When these two towers were taken and they were furnished
 de nos gens et il furent es tours ne ne s'osoient
 with our people and they were in-the towers nor not themselves-dared
 mouvoir pour le grant plenté de gent que il veoient seur
 move for the great plenty of people that they saw on
 le mur entour aus et dedens les autres tours et jus des
 the wall around them and within the other towers and down from-the
 murs, que ch'estoit une fine merveille tant en i avoit
 walls that this-was a pure marvel so-many of-them there had
 il. Quant mesires Pierres d'Amiens vit que chil qui estoient
 it When my-lord Peter of-Amiens saw that those who were

es tours ne se mouvoient et il vit le convine des
in-the towers not themselves moved and he saw the situation of-the
 Grius, si ne fait mais el, si descent il a tere a pié, et se
Greeks so not does more else so comes-down he to land on foot and his
 gent avec lui, en un peu d'espace de tere qui estoit entre
people with him in a little of-space of land which was between
 le mer et le mur. Quant il furent descendu, si gardent
the sea and the wall When they were come-down so look
 avant, si veoient il une fause posterne dont li wis avoient
forward so saw they a false postern whereof the doors had
 esté osté, si estoit muree de nouvel; si vient il la, si avoit
been removed so was walled-up of new so comes he there so he-had
 avec lui bien dis chevaliers et bien soisante serjans. Si i
with him well ten knights and well sixty sergeants So there
 avoit un clerc, Aliaume de Clari avoit a non, qui si estoit
had a clerk Aleaume of Clari had as name who so was
 preus en tous besoins que ch'estoit li premiers a tous les
valiant in all needs that this-was the first at all the
 assaus ou il estoit, et a le tor de Galatha prendre fist
assaults where he was and at the tower of Galata taking did
 chis clers plus de proeches par sen cors, un pour un, que
this clerk more of prowess by his body one for one than
 tout chil de l'ost, fors seigneur Pierron de Braiechoel. Che
all those of the-host except lord Peter of Bracieux This
 fu chis qui tous les autres passa, et haus et bas, que il
was the-one who all the others surpassed both high and low that it
 n'en i eut onques nul qui tant i fesist d'armes ne
not-thereof there had ever anyone who so-much there did of-arms nor
 de proeches de sen cors comme fist Pierres de Braiechoel.
of prowess of his body as did Peter of Bracieux
 Quant il furent venu a chele posterne, si commenchieient
When they were come to that postern so began

a pikier molt durement, et quarrel voloient si dru et tant
to pick very hard and quarrels flew so thick and so-many
 i getoit on de pierres de lassus des murs que il sanloit
there threw one of stones from up-there of-the walls that it seemed
 enaises k'il y fussent enfoï es pierres, tant en
nearly that-they there were buried in-the stones so-many of-them
 i getoit on; et chil de desous avoient escus et targes,
there threw one and those of below had shields and targes
 dont il couvroient chiaus qui picoient a le posterne.
with-which they covered those who picked at the postern
 Et getoit on leur de lassus pos plains de pois boulie
And threw one on-them from up-there pots full of pitch boiled
 et fu grijois et grandesmes pierres, que ch'estoit miracles
and fire Greek and very-great stones that this-was miracle
 de Dieu que on ne les confondoit tous; et tant i
of God that one not them confounded all and so-much there
 souffri mesires Pierres et se gent d'ahans et de grietés
suffered my-lord Peter and his people of-toils and of hardships
 que trop; et tant pichierent a chele posterne de hasches
that exceedingly and so-long picked at that postern with axes
 et de boines espees, d'es, de bous et de pis, que
and with good swords with-planks with staves and with picks that
 il i fisent un grant pertruis. Et quant chele posterne
they there made a great hole And when that postern
 fu perchie, si eswarderent par mi, et virent tant de
was pierced so looked through the-midst and saw so-many of
 gent, et haut et bas, que sanloit que demis li mondes
people both high and low that it-seemed that half the world
 i fust, si qu'il ne s'osoient enhardir d'entrer i.
there were so that-they not themselves-dared embolden to-enter there

76 Quant Aliaumes li clers vit que nus n'i osoit entrer,
When Aleaume the clerk saw that anyone not-there dared enter
 si sali avant et dist qu'il i enterroit. Si avoit illuec
so leapt forward and said that-he there would-enter So had there
 un chevalier, un sien frere, Robers de Clari avoit a non,
a knight a his-own brother Robert of Clari had as name
 qui li desfendi et qui dist qu'il n'i enterroit mie; et
who him forbade and who said that-he not-there would-enter at-all and
 li clers dist que si feroit, si se met ens a piés et
the clerk said that so he-would so himself puts in with feet and
 a mains; et quant ses freres vit chou, si le prent par
with hands and when his brother saw this so him takes by
 le pié, si commenche a sakier a lui, et tant que maugré
the foot so begins to pull to him and so-far that in-spite
 sen frere, vausist ou ne dengnast, que li clers i entra.
(of-)his brother willed-he or not deigned-he that the clerk there entered
 Quant il fu ens, se li keurent sus tant de ches Grius
When he was in so on-him run upon so-many of these Greeks
 que trop, et chil de deseur les murs li acuellent a
that exceedingly and those of above the walls on-him set to
 geter grandesmes pierres. Quant li clers vit chou, si sake
throw very-great stones When the clerk saw this so draws
 le coutel, si leur keurt sus, si les faisoit aussi fuir devant
the knife so on-them runs upon so them made as flee before
 lui comme bestes. Si disoit a chiaux de defors, a seigneur
him as beasts So said to those of outside to lord
 Pierron et a se gent: «Sire, entrés hardiement! Je voi qu'il
Peter and to his people Lord enter boldly I see that-they
 se vont molt desconfissant et qu'il s'en vont
themselves go much breaking and that-they themselves-thence go
 fuiant.» Quant mesires Pierres oï chou et se gent qui par
fleeing When my-lord Peter heard this and his people who on

dehors erent, si entra ens mesires Pierres et se gent, si ne
outside were so entered in my-lord Peter and his people so not
 fu mie plus que li disime de chevaliers, mais bien i avoit
was at-all more than the tenth of knights but well there had
 soisante serjans avec lui, et tout estoient a pié laiens. Et
sixty sergeants with him and all were on foot in-there And
 quant il furent ens et chil qui estoient seur les murs et
when they were in and those who were on the walls and
 en chel endroit les virent, si eurent tel peur qu'il n'oserent
in that place them saw so had such fear that-they not-dared
 demorer en chel endroit, ains widierent grant partie du
remain in that place but emptied great part of-the
 mur, si s'en fuirent qui miex miex. Et li empereres
wall so themselves-thence fled who better better And the emperor
 Morchoffles li traîtres estoit molt pres d'iluec, a mains de
Murziphlus the traitor was very near of-there at less than
 le getee d'un cailleu, et faisoit sonner ses buisines d'argent
the cast of-a pebble and had sounded his trumpets of-silver
 et ses timbres et faisoit un mout grant beubant.
and his timbrels and made a very great display

The City Taken

XXIV

Murziphlus rides at Peter of Amiens's men and turns back; they break open a gate, the knights ride in, and he flees, leaving his tents to Peter of Bracieux. The barons hold still for the night, fearing the narrow streets, and plan to fight or to burn the city. At midnight Murziphlus flees, and Lascar, made emperor, crosses to Nicaea. In the morning the clergy come in procession to beg mercy, and the rich men seize the best houses before the poor knights know it.

- 77 Quant il vit monseigneur Pierron et se gent qui estoient ens
When he saw my-lord Peter and his people who were in
a pié, si fist molt grant sanlant de lui corre sus et de ferir
on foot so made very great show of him to-run upon and of to-strike
des esperons et vint bien dusques en mi voies. Quant mesires
with-the spurs and came well as-far in mid way When my-lord
Pierres le vit venir, si commencha a reconforter se gent et a
Peter him saw come so began to hearten his people and to
dire: «Or, seigneur, or du bien faire! Nous arons ja le
say Now lords now of-the well doing We will-have presently the
bataille; veschi l'empereur ou il vient. Wardés qu'il n'i
battle behold-here the-emperor where he comes Look that-it not-there
ait si hardi qui refust arriere, mais or pensés du bien faire!»
have so bold who shrink back but now think of-the well doing
- 78 Quant Morchofles li traïtres vit qu'il ne fuïroient nient,
When Murziphlus the traitor saw that-they not would-flee at-all
si s'arresta et puis se retorna ariere a ses tentes.
so himself-balted and then himself returned back to his tents
Quant mesure Pierres vit que li empereres fu retornés, si
When my-lord Peter saw that the emperor was returned so
envoie il une trope de ses serjans a une porte qui pres
sends he a troop of his sergeants to a gate which near

estoit d'iluec et kemanda que on le despechast et que on
was of-there and commanded that one it should-smash and that one
 l'ouvrist. Et chil alerent, si commencent a buskier et a
it-should-open And those went so begin to hack and to
 ferir a chele porte et de haches et d'espees, tant qu'il
strike at that gate both with axes and with-swords so-far that-they
 rompirent les verax de fer qui molt estoient fort et les
broke the bolts of iron which very were strong and the
 flaiiaus, et qu'il ouvrirent le porte. Et quant le porte fu
bars and that-they opened the gate And when the gate was
 ouverte et chil de dehors virent chou, si font atraire leur
opened and those of outside saw this so have drawn their
 uissiers avant et les chevax amener hors, si monterent,
horse-transport forward and the horses led out so mounted
 si commencerent a entrer grant aleure en le chité par
so began to enter great pace into the city through
 mi le porte. Et quant li Franchois furent ens tout
the-midst-of the gate And when the French were in all
 monté, et quant li empereres Morchoffles li traîtres les
mounted and when the emperor Murzuphlus the traitor them
 vit, si eut si grant peur que il laissa ses tentes et ses
saw so had so great fear that he left his tents and his
 juiaus illuec, si s'en fui avant en le chité qui molt
jewels there so himself-thence fled ahead into the city which very
 estoit grande et longe et lee, car on dit la que a
was great and long and wide for one says there that to
 aler entor les murs a bien neuf liwes, tant ont li mur
go around the walls has well nine leagues so-much have the walls
 d'achainte qui entor le vile vont, et a bien largement
of-circuit which around the town go and has well fully
 le chités par dedens deus liwes franchoises de lonc et
the city by within two leagues French of length and

deus de lé; et si ke sires Pierres de Braiechoel eut les
two of breadth and so that lord Peter of Bracieux had the
 tentes Morchofle et ses cosfres et ses juiaus qu'il illuec
tents (of-)Murzuphlus and his coffers and his jewels that-he there
 laissiés avoit. Quant chil qui desfendoient as tors et as
left had When those who defended at-the towers and at-the
 murs virent que li Francois estoient entré en le chité
walls saw that the French were entered into the city
 et leur empereres s'en estoit fuis, si n'i oserent
and their emperor himself-thence was fled so not-there dared
 demorer, ains s'en fuirent qui miex miex: ensi fu le
remain but themselves-thence fled who better better thus was the
 chités prise. Quant le chités fu si faitement prise et li
city taken When the city was in-such wise taken and the
 Francois furent ens, si se tinrent tout coi. Adont si
French were in so themselves held all still Then so
 s'asanlerent li haut baron et prisent conseil entr'aus
themselves-assembled the high barons and took counsel among-themselves
 qu'il feroient; tant que on fist crier par l'ost qu'il
what-they would-do so-far that one had cried through the-host that-it
 n'i eust si hardi qui avant alast en le chité, car che
not-there should-have so bold who forward should-go into the city for this
 seroit uns perix d'aler i, que on ne leur getast pierres
would-be a peril to-go there that one — on-them should-throw stones
 des palais qui molt estoient grant et haut, et que on
from-the palaces which very were great and high and that one
 ne les ochisist es rues qui trop estoient estroites, ne il
— them should-kill in-the streets which too were narrow nor they
 ne s'i porroient mie desfendre, ou que on ne leur
not themselves-there could at-all defend or that one — on-them
 boutast le fu par derriere et que on ne les arisist. Et
should-set the fire from behind and that one — them should-burn And

pour ches aventures et pour ches peris, si ne s'i
for these chances and for these perils so not themselves-therein
 oserent mie metre ne espandre, ains demourerent esluet tout
dared at-all put nor spread but remained there all
 coi; et si s'acorderent li baron a ches conseil que se li
still and so themselves-agreed the barons to this counsel that if the
 Griu se voloient combatre l'endemain, qui estoient encore
Greeks themselves wished to-fight the-next-day who were still
 chent tans plus de gent armes portans que li Francois
hundred times more of people arms bearing than the French
 n'estoient, qu'il s'armeroient l'endemain par matin et
were that-they themselves-would-arm the-next-day in morning and
 ordeneroient leur batailles, et qu'il les atenderoient en
would-order their battalions and that-they them would-await in
 unes plaches qui enluec devant estoient en le chité; et
some squares which there before were in the city and
 s'il ne se voloient combatre ne il ne voloient le vile
if-they not themselves wished to-fight nor they not wished the town
 rendre, qu'il esgarderoient de quel part li vens venroit,
to-render that-they would-see from what side the wind would-come
 si bouteroient le fu seur le vent, si les arderoient: ensi si
so would-set the fire on the wind so them would-burn thus so
 les prenderoient par forche. A ches conseil s'acorderent tout
them would-take by force To this counsel themselves-agreed all
 li baron. Quant che vint au vespre, si se desarmerent
the barons When this came at-the evening so themselves disarmed
 li pelerin, si se reposerent, si mengierent, si jurent
the pilgrims so themselves rested so ate so lay
 iluec le nuit devant leur navie par dedens les murs.
there the night before their navy by within the walls

- 79 Quant che vint vers mie nuit, que li empereres Morchoffles
When this came toward mid night that the emperor Murzuphlus
 li traïtres seut que tout li Francois furent en le chité, si
the traitor knew that all the French were in the city so
 en eut mout grant peur, ne onques n'i osa demorer; ains
thereof had very great fear nor ever not-there dared remain but
 s'en fui a mie nuit que on n'en seut mot. Quant li
himself-thence fled at mid night so-that one not-thereof knew word When the
 Griu virent que leur empereres s'en estoit fuis, si traissent
Greeks saw that their emperor himself-thence was fled so drew
 il a un haut homme de le chité, Laskers avoit a non, chele
they to a high man of the city Lascaris had as name that
 nuit meesme tantost, si en font il empereur. Quant chis
night same at-once so of-him make they emperor When this-one
 fu fais empereres, si n'i osa demorer, ains se mist en
was made emperor so not-there dared remain but himself put into
 une galie anchois que il fust jours, si s'en passa outre le
a galley before that it were day so himself-thence passed beyond the
 bras Saint Jorge et s'en ala a Nike le grant, qui une
arm (of-)Saint George and himself-thence went to Nicaea the great which a
 boine chités est; illuec s'arresta, s'en fu sires et empereres.
good city is there himself-balted so-thereof was lord and emperor
- 80 Quant che vint l'endemain par matin, si ne font mais el
When this came the-next-day in morning so not do more else
 prestre et clerc revestu, Engles, Danois estoient et gens
priests and clerks vested English Danes were and people
 d'autres nations, si vienent il a l'ost as Francois a
of-other nations so come they to the-host of-the French in
 pourchession, si leur crient il merchi, si leur disent tout
procession so to-them cry they mercy so to-them say all
 ensi comme li Griu avoient fait, et si disent que tout li
thus as the Greeks had done and so say that all the

Griu s'en estoient fui ne n'avoit remés en le chité
Greeks themselves-thence were fled nor not-had remained in the city
 fors povre gent. Quant li Franchois oïrent che, s'en furent
except poor people When the French heard this so-thereof were
 tout lié; et puis après fist on crier par l'ost que nus
all glad and then afterward had one cried through the-host that anyone
 ne presist ostel devant la que on aroit atiré comment
not should-take lodging before there that one would-have arranged how
 on les prenderoit. Adont si s'asanlerent li haut homme,
one them would-take Then so themselves-assembled the high men
 li rike homme, et prisent conseil entr'aus, que le menue
the rich men and took counsel among-themselves so-that the small
 gent n'en seurent mot ne li povre chevalier de l'ost, que
people not-thereof knew word nor the poor knights of the-host that
 il prenderoient les meilleurs ostex de le vile; et tresdout
they would-take the best lodgings of the town and from-then
 commenchierent il a traïr le menue gent, et a porter leur
began they to betray the small people and to bear to-them
 male foi et male compaignie, que il compererent puis
bad faith and bad company which they paid-for then
 molt kier, si comme nous vous dirons après. Si envoierent
very dear so as we to-you will-tell afterward So they-sent
 saisir tous les melleurs ostex et les plus rikes de le vile, si
to-seize all the best lodgings and the most rich of the town so
 qu'il les eurent tous saisis anchois que li povre chevalier
that-they them had all seized before that the poor knights
 ne le menue gent de l'ost s'apercheussent. Et quant le
nor the small people of the-host themselves-perceived And when the
 povre gent s'aperchurent, si alerent dont qui miex miex,
poor people themselves-perceived so went then who better better
 si prisent chou qu'il atainsent; assés en i trouvèrent
so took this that-they reached plenty thereof there found

et assés en prisent et assés en i remest, car le
and plenty thereof took and plenty thereof there remained for the
 chités estoit molt grans et molt pueplee. Si fist li marchis
city was very great and very peopled So had the marquiss
 prendre le palais de Bouke de Lion, et le moustier Sainte
taken the palace of Mouth of Lion and the minster (of-)Saint
 Sousphie et les maisons le patriarke; et li autre haut
Sophia and the houses (of-)the patriarch and the other high
 homme, si comme li conte, fisent prendre les plus rikes
men so as the counts had taken the most rich
 palais et les plus rikes abeïes que on i peut trouver, car,
palaces and the most rich abbeys that one there could find for
 puis que le vile fu prise, ne fist on mal n'a povre n'a
since that the town was taken not did one harm not-to poor nor-to
 rike. Ains s'en ala qui aler s'en vaut, et qui
rich But himself-thence went who to-go himself-thence wished and who
 vaut si remest; si s'en alerent li plus rike de le vile.
wished so remained so themselves-thence went the most rich of the town

The Booty

XXV

The booty is brought to an abbey under ten French and ten Venetian guards, more wealth than was ever seen, for the Greeks say two thirds of the world's wealth is in Constantinople. The guards and the rich men steal the jewels and the cloth of gold, and nothing is shared with the poor knights and sergeants but the coarse silver, such as the ladies' bath basins. The Venetians have their half all the same.

- 81 Après si kemande on que tous li avoïrs des waains fust
Afterward so commanded one that all the wealth of-the gains should-be
 aportés a une abeïe qui en le cité estoit. Illuec fu aportés li
brought to an abbey which in the city was There was brought the

avoires, et prist on dis chevaliers haus hommes des pelerins
wealth and took one ten knights high men of-the pilgrims
 et dis Veniciens que on cuidoit a loiaus, si les mist on a
and ten Venetians whom one thought as loyal so them put one to
 chel avoir warder. Si comme li avoires fu la aportés, qui
that wealth guard So as the wealth was there brought which
 si estoit rikes et tant i avoit de rike vaisselemente d'or
so was rich and so-much there had of rich plate of-gold
 et d'argent et de dras a or et tant de rikes joiaus que
and of-silver and of cloths of gold and so-many of rich jewels that
 ch'estoit une fine merveille du grant avoir qui luekes fu
this-was a pure marvel of-the great wealth which there was
 aportés, mais puis que chis siecles fu estorés, si grans avoires,
brought but since that this world was founded so great wealth
 ne si nobles, ne si rikes, ne fu veus, ne conquis, ne au
nor so noble nor so rich not was seen nor won neither in-the
 tans Alixandre, ne au tans Charlemaine, ne devant ne après;
time (of-)Alexander nor in-the time (of-)Charlemagne nor before nor after
 ne je ne quit mie, au mien ensient, que es quarante
nor I not think at-all to-the my knowledge that in-the forty
 plus rikes chités du monde eust tant d'avoir comme on
most rich cities of-the world there-had so-much of-wealth as one
 trouva u cors de Constantinoble. Et si tesmongnoient li
found in-the body of Constantinople And so testified the
 Griu que les deus pars de l'avoir du monde estoient en
Greeks that the two parts of the-wealth of-the world were in
 Coustantinoble et le tierche estoit esparsse par le monde.
Constantinople and the third was scattered through the world
 Et chil meïsmes qui l'avoir devoient warder si prenoient les
And those same who the-wealth were-to guard so took the
 joiaus d'or et chou que il voloient et embloient l'avoir;
jewels of-gold and this that they wisbed and stole the-wealth

et prenoit cascuns des rikes hommes ou joiaus d'or ou
and took each of-the rich men either jewels of-gold or
 dras de soie a or, ou chou que il amoit miex, si l'en
cloths of silk with gold or this that he loved best so it-thence
 portoit. Ensi faitement si commenichierent l'avoir a embler,
carried Thus wise so they-began the-wealth to steal
 si que on ne departi onques au quemun de l'ost, ne as
so that one not distributed ever to-the commons of the-host nor to-the
 povres chevaliers, ne as serjans qui l'avoir avoient aidie a
poor knights nor to-the sergeants who the-wealth had helped to
 waaingnier, fors le gros argent, si comme des paieles d'argent
win except the coarse silver so as of-the basins of-silver
 que les dames de le chité portoient as bains. Et li autres
that the ladies of the city carried to-the baths And the other
 avoires qui remest a partir fu cachiés si males voies com je
wealth which remained to divide was driven so bad ways as I
 vous ai dit, mais totes eures en eurent li Venicien leur
to-you have said but all the-same thereof had the Venetians their
 moitié, et les pierres precieuses et li grans tresors qui remest
half and the stones precious and the great treasure which remained
 a partir ala si males voies comme nous vous dirons après.
to divide went so bad ways as we to-you will-tell afterward

The Wonders of Constantinople

XXVI

The palace of Mouth of Lion holds five hundred mosaic chambers and a Holy Chapel with the True Cross, the lance, the nails, the crown of thorns, and the Baptist's head, and a tile and a cloth bearing Christ's face. Blachernae holds the crowns and robes of earlier emperors. In Saint Sophia the columns heal and a tube at the door sucks out sickness. Before it rides the Greeks' copper Heraclius, and the Seven Apostles, said to be richer, holds seven apostles' bodies.

Quant le chités fu prise et li pelerin se furent 82
When the city was taken and the pilgrims themselves were
herbergié, si com je vous ai dit, et li palais furent pris, si
lodged so as I to-you have said and the palaces were taken so
trova on tant de riqueches es palais que trop. Si estoit
found one so-much of riches in-the palaces that exceedingly So was
li palais de Bouke de Lion si rikes et si fais com je vous
the palace of Mouth of Lion so rich and so made as I to-you
dirai. Il avoit bien dedens chu palais, que li marchis tenoit,
will-tell It had well within this palace that the marquis held
chinc chens mansions, qui toutes tenoient l'une a l'autre et
five hundred chambers which all held the-one to the-other and
estoient totes faites a ore musike, et si en i avoit bien
were all made in gold mosaic and so of-them there had well
trente capeles, que grans que petites; si en i avoit une
thirty chapels both great and small so of-them there had one
que on apeloit le Sainte Capele, qui si estoit rike et noble
that one called the Holy Chapel which so was rich and noble
qu'il n'i avoit ne gons ne verveles ne autres membres
that-it not-there had neither hinges nor hasps nor other members
qui a fer appartenissent, qui tout ne fussent d'argent, ne
which to iron belonged which all not were of-silver nor

si n'i avoit colombe qui ne fust ou de jaspe, ou de
so not-there had column which not were either of jasper or of
 pourfile ou de rikes pierres precieuses. Et li pavemens de
porphyry or of rich stones precious And the pavement of
 le capele estoit d'un blanc marbre si liste et si cler que il
the chapel was of-a white marble so smooth and so clear that it
 sanloit qu'il fust de cristal; et estoit chele capele si rike et
seemed that-it were of crystal and was that chapel so rich and
 si noble, que on ne vous porroit mie aconter le grant biauté
so noble that one not to-you could at-all recount the great beauty
 ne le grant nobleche de chele capele. Dedens chele capele,
nor the great nobility of that chapel Witbin that chapel
 si trova on de molt rikes saintuaires, que on i trova deus
so found one of very rich relics for one there found two
 pieches de le Vraie Crois aussi grosses comme le gambe a un
pieces of the True Cross as thick as the leg of a
 homme et aussi longues comme demie toise, et si i trova
man and as long as half fathom and so there found
 on le fer de le lanche dont Nostre Sires eut le costé
one the iron of the lance with-which Our Lord had the side
 perchié, et les deux cleus qu'il eut fichiés par mi
pierced and the two nails that-he had driven through the-midst-of
 les mains et par mi les piés; et si trova on en une
the hands and through the-midst-of the feet and so found one in a
 fiole de cristal grant partie de sen sanc; et si i trova on
phial of crystal great part of his blood and so there found one
 le tunike qu'il avoit vestue, que on li despoulla quant
the tunic that-he had worn that one from-him stripped when
 on l'eut mené au mont de Cauvaire; et si i trova on
one him-had led to-the mount of Calvary and so there found one
 le beneoite corone dont il fu coronés, qui estoit de joins
the blessed crown with-which he was crowned which was of rushes

marins aussi pognans comme fers d'alesnes. Et si i trova
marine as sharp as irons of-awls And so there found
 on de le vesteure Nostre Dame, et le kief monseigneur
one of the garment (of-)Our Lady and the head (of-)my-lord
 saint Jehan Baptistre, et tant d'autres rikes saintuaires
saint John Baptist and so-many of-other rich relics
 illuec, ne le vous porroie mie aconter ne dire le verité.
there not it to-you I-could at-all recount nor tell the truth
 Or avoit encore autres saintuaires en chele capele que 83
Now there-had yet other relics in that chapel that
 nous vous aviemes evliés a dire, car il i avoit deus
we to-you had forgotten to tell for it there had two
 riches vaissiaus d'or qui pendoient en mi le capele
rich vessels of-gold which hung in the-midst-of the chapel
 a deus grosses caaines d'argent. En l'un de ches vaissiaus,
by two great chains of-silver In the-one of these vessels
 si i avoit une tuile, et en l'autre une touaile; si vous
so there had a tile and in the-other a cloth so to-you
 dirons dont chil saintuaire estoient venu. Il eut jadis un
we-will-tell whence those relics were come It had once a
 saint homme en Coustantinoble; si avint que chus sains
holy man in Constantinople so happened that this holy
 hons recouvroit de tiule le maison a une veve femme
man roofed with tile the house of a widowed woman
 pour l'amour de Damedieu. Si comme il le recouvroit, si
for the-love of Lord-God So as he it roofed so
 s'aparut Nostre Sires a lui, si parla a lui; or avoit
himself-appeared Our Lord to him so spoke to him now had
 li boins hons une toaile entour lui: «Cha donne», fist
the good man a cloth around him Here give said
 Nostre Sires, «chele toaile», et li boins hons li bailla,
Our Lord that cloth and the good man to-him banded

et Nostre Sires en envolepa sen visage, si que se forme
and Our Lord therein wrapped his face so that his form
 i fu emprentee, puis se li rebailla; se li dist
thereon was imprinted then so to-him handed-back so to-him said
 qu'il l'emportast et qu'il la toucast as malades, et qui
that-he it-should-carry-off and that-he it should-touch to-the sick and who
 creanche i aroit si seroit netiés de se maladie. Et
belief therein would-have so would-be cleansed of his sickness And
 li boins hons le prist, si l'enporta; mais devant chou qu'il
the good man it took so it-carried-off but before this that-be
 l'emportast, quant Dieus li eut rendue se toaile, si le
it-carried-off when God to-him had returned his cloth so it
 prist le boins hons, si le mucha sous une tiule dusques au
took the good man so it hid under a tile until at-the
 vespre. Au vespre, quant il s'en ala, si prist se touaile;
evening At-the evening when he himself-thence went so took his cloth
 si comme il leva le tiule, si vit le forme emprentee en le
so as he raised the tile so saw the form imprinted in the
 tiule aussi comme en le toaile; si enporta le tiule et le
tile just as in the cloth so carried-off the tile and the
 toaile, puis en warirent maint malade; et chil saintuaire
cloth then thereby were-healed many-a sick-man and those relics
 pendoient en mi le capele, si comme je vous ai dit.
hung in the-midst-of the chapel so as I to-you have said
 Or avoit encore en chele Sainte Capele un autre saintuaire,
Now there-had yet in that Holy Chapel an other relic
 car il i avoit une ymage de saint Dimitre qui estoit
for it there had an image of saint Demetrius which was
 painte en un tavle. Chis ymages si rendoit tant d'oile
painted on a panel This image so gave-forth so-much of-oil
 que on n'en savoit tant oster, comme il decoroit de
that one not-thereof knew-how-to so-much remove as it flowed from

chel ymage. Si i avoit bien vint des capeles, et si i
that image So there had well twenty of-the chapels and so there
 avoit bien deus chens mansions, ou trois chens, qui toutes
had well two hundred chambers or three hundred which all
 tenoient ensement l'une a l'autre et estoient toutes faites
held likewise the-one to the-other and were all made
 a ore musike. Et estoit chis palais si rikes et si nobles
in gold mosaic And was this palace so rich and so noble
 que on ne le vous saroit mie descrire ne aconter
that one not it to-you would-know-how-to at-all describe nor recount
 le grant nobleche ne le grant riqueche de chu palais. En
the great nobility nor the great richness of this palace In
 chel palais de Blakerne trova on molt grant tresor et molt
that palace of Blachernae found one very great treasure and very
 rike, que on i trova les rikes coronas qui avoient esté
rich for one there found the rich crowns which had been
 as empereurs qui par devant i furent, et les riques
of-the emperors who in times-before there were and the rich
 joiaus d'or, et les rikes dras de soie a or, et les rikes
jewels of-gold and the rich cloths of silk with gold and the rich
 robes emperiaus, et les riques pierres precieuses, et tant
robes imperial and the rich stones precious and so-many
 d'autres riqueches que on ne saroit mie nombrer le
of-other riches that one not would-know-how-to at-all number the
 grant tresor d'or et d'argent que on trova es palais et
great treasure of-gold and of-silver that one found in-the palaces and
 en molt de lieux ailleurs en le chité.
in many of places elsewhere in the city

Après li pelerin esgarderent le grandeur de le vile, et
Afterward the pilgrims looked-at the greatness of the town and
 les palais, et les riques abeïes, et les riques moustiers, et
the palaces and the rich abbeyes and the rich minsters and

les grans merveilles qui estoient en le vile; si s'en
the great marvels which were in the town so themselves-thereat
 merveillierent molt durement, et se merveillierent molt
marveled very greatly and themselves marveled much
 du moustier Sainte Sousphie et de le riqueche qui i estoit.
at-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia and at the richness which there was

- 85 Or vous dirai du moustier Sainte Souphie com fais
Now to-you I-will-tell of-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia how made
 il estoit; Sainte Souphie en griu ch'est Sainte Trinités en
it was Saint Sophia in Greek this-is Holy Trinity in
 franchois. Li moustiers Sainte Souphie estoit trestous reons.
French The minster (of-)Saint Sophia was all round
 Si i avoit unes vautes par dedens le moustier entor a le
So there had some vaults by within the minster around in the
 reonde, qui estoient portees d'unes grosses colombes molt
round which were borne by-some great columns very
 rikes, que il n'i avoit colombe qui ne fust ou de jaspe
rich that it not-there had column which not were either of jasper
 ou de porphile ou de riques pierres precieuses, ne si n'en
or of porphyry or of rich stones precious nor so not-thereof
 i avoit nule de ches colombes qui ne portast medechine:
there had any of these columns which not bore healing
 tele i avoit qui warissoit du mal des rains, quant on
such there had which healed of-the pain of-the loins when one
 s'i froitoit, tele qui warisoit du mal du flanc, et
oneself-thereon rubbed such which healed of-the pain of-the side and
 teles qui warissoient d'autres maladies, ne si n'i avoit huis
such which healed of-other sicknesses nor so not-there had door
 en chu moustier, ne gons, ne verveles, ne autres membres
in this minster nor binges nor basps nor other members
 qui a fer appartenissent, qui tout ne fussent d'argent. Li
which to iron belonged which all not were of-silver The

maistres auteus du moustier estoit si rikes que on ne le
master altar of-the minster was so rich that one not it
 porroit mie esprisier, car le tavle, qui seur l'autel estoit, ert
could at-all appraise for the table which on the-altar was was
 d'or et de pierres precieuses esquartelees et molues, tout
of-gold and of stones precious broken and ground all
 jeté ensanle, que uns rikes empereres fist faire; si avoit bien
cast together which a rich emperor had made so bad well
 chele tavle quatorze piés de lonc; entor l'autel avoit unes
that table fourteen feet of length around the-altar there-had some
 coulombes d'argent qui portoient un abitacle seur l'autel qui
columns of-silver which bore a canopy over the-altar which
 estoit ausi fais comme uns klokiers, qui tous estoit d'argent
was as made as a belfry which all was of-silver
 massis, qui estoit si rikes que on ne peust mie nombrer
massive which was so rich that one not could at-all number
 l'avoir que il valoit. Li lieus la ou on lisoit l'ewangile
the-wealth that it was-worth The place there where one read the-gospel
 estoit si rikes et si nobles que nous ne le vous sariemes
was so rich and so noble that we not it to-you would-know-how-to
 mie descrire com fais il estoit. Après contreval le moustier
at-all describe how made it was Afterward down-along the minster
 pendoit bien chent lampiers; si n'i avoit lampier qui ne
hung well hundred lamp-bolders so not-there had lamp-bolder which not
 pendist a une grosse caaine d'argent, aussi grosse comme le
hung by a great chain of-silver as thick as the
 brach a un homme; si i avoit en cascun lampier bien vint
arm of a man so there had in each lamp-bolder well twenty
 et chinc lampes ou plus, et si n'i avoit lampier qui ne
and five lamps or more and so not-there had lamp-bolder which not
 vausist bien deus chens mars d'argent. A l'anel du grant
was-worth well two hundred marks of-silver At the-ring of-the great

huis du moustier, qui tous estoit d'argent, si i pendoit
door of-the minster which all was of-silver so there hung
 uns buhotiaus que on ne savoit de quele despoise il estoit;
a tube that one not knew of what material it was
 si estoit du grant a une fleuste dont chil pasteur fleustent.
so was of-the size of a flute whereon those shepherds pipe
 Ichis buhotiaus si avoit tele vertu com je vous dirai. Quant
This tube so had such virtue as I to-you will-tell When
 uns enfers hons qui avoit mal dedens le cors si comme
an infirm man who had sickness within the body so as
 d'enfle, qui dedens le ventre estoit enflés, le metoit en se
of-swelling who within the belly was swollen it put in his
 bouche, ja si peu ne li eust mis, quant chus buhotiaus
mouth ever so little not it had put when this tube
 le prenoit, se li suchoit toute chele maladie, et chu
him took so from-him sucked all that sickness and this
 venin li faisoit corre hors par mi le geule, si le
venom from-him made run out through the-midst-of the mouth so him
 tenoit si fort qu'il le faisoit esruullier et li faisoit les
beld so strongly that-it him made goggle and of-him made the
 iex torner en le teste, ne ne s'en pooit partir devant
eyes turn in the head nor not himself-therefrom could part before
 la que li buhotiaus li avoit suchié chele maladie toute
there that the tube from-him had sucked that sickness all
 hors; et avec tout chou, qui estoit plus malades, si le tenoit
out and with all this who was more sick so him held
 plus longement, et quant uns hons qui n'estoit mie malades
more long and when a man who not-was at-all sick
 le metoit a se bouque, ja ne le tenist ne peu ne grant.
it put to his mouth ever not him would-hold neither little nor much

Après devant chu moustier de Sainte Souphie, avoit une 86
Afterward before this minster of Saint Sophia there-had a
 grosse colombe qui bien avoit trois brachies a un homme
great column which well had three arm-spans of a man
 de grosseur, et si avoit bien chinquante toises de haut;
of thickness and so had well fifty fathoms of height
 si estoit faite de marbre et puis de coivre par deseure le
so was made of marble and then of copper right above the
 marbre, et estoit molt bien loïie de boines bendes de fer.
marble and was very well bound with good bands of iron
 Lassus, seur le bout de chele coulombe, si avoit une pierre
Up-there on the top of that column so there-had a stone
 qui bien avoit quinze piés de lonc et autant de lé. Seur
which well had fifteen feet of length and as-much of breadth On
 chele pierre si avoit un empereur jeté de coivre, seur un
that stone so there-had an emperor cast of copper on a
 grant cheval de coivre, qui tendoit se main vers païenisme;
great horse of copper who stretched his hand toward beathendom
 et avoit lettres seur lui escrites qui disoient que juroit
and there-had letters on him written which said that he-swore
 que ja li Sarrasin n'aroient triwes de lui, et en s'autre
that ever the Saracens not-would-have truce from him and in his-other
 main tenoit une pume d'or et une crois seur le pume. Et
hand held an apple of-gold and a cross on the apple And
 disoient li Griu que chou estoit Eracles li empereres; et
said the Greeks that this was Heraclius the emperor and
 avoit bien, que seur le crupe du cheval, que seur le teste,
there-had well both on the croup of-the horse and on the head
 que entor, dis aires de hairons, qui illuec aaroient cascun an.
and about ten nests of herons which there nested each year

87 Après, ailleurs en le chité, avoit un autre moustier que
Afterward elsewhere in the city there-had an other minster that
 on apeloit le moustier des Set Apostres. Si disoit on qu'il
one called the minster of-the Seven Apostles So said one that-it
 estoit encore plus rikes et plus nobles que li moustiers
was yet more rich and more noble than the minster
 Sainte Souphie, et tant i avoit de rikeches et de
(of-)Saint Sophia and so-much there had of riches and of
 nobleches que on ne vous saroit mi aconter le
nobilities that one not to-you would-know-how-to at-all recount the
 nobleche ne le rikeche de chu moustier. Si i gesoient
nobility nor the richness of this minster So there lay
 en chu moustier set cors d'apostres, et si i estoit le
in this minster seven bodies of-apostles and so there was the
 colombe de marbre ou Nostre Sires fu loiés, anchois qu'il
column of marble where Our Lord was bound before that-he
 fust mis en le crois; et si disoit on que Coustentins li
was put on the cross and so said one that Constantine the
 empereres i gesoit, et Helaine, et assés autres empereurs.
emperor there lay and Helen and plenty other emperors

The Gates, the Hippodrome, and the Columns

XXVII

A golden ball on the Golden Mantle gate keeps off thunder, and the Golden Gate opens only for an emperor coming home a conqueror. At the emperor's games copper beasts once played by enchantment. Two copper women point west, whence the city's conquerors will come, and to a vile place. Two hermits' columns foretell the city's fortunes, this conquest among them. At Blachernae the shroud rose upright every Friday, and Manuel lies in an unmatched tomb.

Or avoit ailleurs en le chité une porte que on apeloit le 88

Now there-had elsewhere in the city a gate that one called the Mantiau d'or. Seur chele porte, si avoit un pumel d'or, qui Mantle of-gold On that gate so there-had a ball of-gold which estoit fais par tel encantement que li Griu disoient que, ja was made by such enchantment that the Greeks said that ever tant comme li pumiax i fust, caus de tounoirre ne carroit so-long as the ball there were stroke of thunder not would-fall en le chité; seur chu pumel avoit un image jeté de coivre, in the city on this ball there-had an image cast of copper qui avoit un mantel d'or afulé, si le tendoit avant seur sen which had a mantle of-gold donned so it it-stretched forward on its brach, et avoit letres escrites seur lui qui disoient que arm and there-had letters written on it which said that «tout chil», fait li ymages, «qui mainent en Constantinoble all those says the image who dwell in Constantinople un an, doivent avoir mantel d'or aussi comme jou ai». a year ought have mantle of-gold just as I have

Ailleurs en le chité a une autre porte que on apele Portes 89

Elsewhere in the city there-is an other gate that one calls Gates Ore. Seur chele porte avoit deux olifans jetés de coivre, qui Golden On that gate there-had two elephants cast of copper which

si estoient grant que ch'estoit une fine merveille. Ichele porte
so were great that this-was a pure marvel That gate
 n'estoit onques ouverte devant la que li empereres revenoit
not-was ever opened before there that the emperor came-back
 de bataille, et que il avoit tere conquise. Quant il revenoit
from battle and that he had land conquered When he came-back
 de bataille et il avoit tere conquise, dont si venoit li clergies
from battle and he had land conquered then so came the clergy
 de le chité a pourchession encontre l'empereur, si ouvroit on
of the city in procession to-meet the-emperor so opened one
 chele porte, se li amenoit on un curre d'or qui estoit ausi
that gate so to-him brought one a chariot of-gold which was as
 fais comme uns cars a quatre roes, que on apeloit curre; ens
made as a cart with four wheels that one called chariot right
 en mi chu curre avoit un haut siege, et seur le siege
in the-midst-of this chariot there-had a high seat and on the seat
 avoit une caiiere, et entor le caiiere avoit quatre colombes
there-had a chair and around the chair there-had four columns
 qui portoient un habitacle qui aombroit le caiiere, qui sanloit
which bore a canopy which shaded the chair which seemed
 qu'il fust tout d'or. Si seoit li empereres, en chele caiiere tous
that-it were all of-gold So sat the emperor in that chair all
 coronés, si entroit en chele porte, si le menoit on seur chu
crowned so entered at that gate so him led one on this
 curre, a grant goie et a grant feste, dusques en sen palais.
chariot with great joy and with great feast as-far into his palace

90 Ore en un autre lieu en le chité avoit une autre merveille, que
Now in an other place in the city there-had an other marvel for
 il i avoit une plache, qui pres estoit du palais de Bouke
it there had a square which near was to-the palace of Mouth
 de Lion, que on apeloit les Jus l'empereur. Ichele plache si
of Lion that one called the Games (of-)the-emperor That square so

a bien arbalestee et demie de lonc et pres d'une de lé;
has well crossbow-shot and half of length and near of-one of breadth
 entor chele plache si i avoit bien trente degrés ou quarante,
around that square so there had well thirty steps or forty
 la ou li Griu montoient pour eswarder les jus; et par
there where the Greeks mounted for to-watch the games and right
 deseure ches degrés, si i avoit unes loges molt cointes et
above these steps so there had some boxes very elegant and
 molt nobles, ou li empereres et l'empeerris se seoient
very noble where the emperor and the-empress themselves sat
 quant on juoit, et li autre haut homme et les dames. Se i
when one played and the other high men and the ladies If there
 avoit deus jus ensanle, quant on juoit; si se wagioient
had two games together when one played so themselves wagered
 ensanle li empereres et l'empeerris que li uns des jus
together the emperor and the-empress that the one of-the games
 giueroit miex de l'autre, et tout chil ensement qui les gius
would-play better than the-other and all those likewise who the games
 esgardoient. Du lonc de chele plache, si avoit une mesiere
watched Along-the length of that square so there-had a wall
 qui bien avoit quinze piés de haut et dis de lé; deseure
which well had fifteen feet of height and ten of breadth above
 chele maisiere, si avoit il ymages d'ommes et de femmes et
that wall so had it images of-men and of women and
 de chevaus et de bués et de cameus et de ors et de lions,
of horses and of oxen and of camels and of bears and of lions
 et de molt de manieres de bestes getees de coivre, qui si
and of many of manners of beasts cast of copper which so
 estoient bien faites et si natureument formees qu'il n'a si
were well made and so naturally formed that-it not-has so
 boin maistre en paenisme ne en crestienté qui seust mie
good master in heathendom nor in Christendom who knew-how-to at-all

pourtraire ne si bien former ymages comme chil ymage estoient

portray nor so well form images as those images were
formé; et soloient cha en arriere giuer par encantement,

formed and were-wont here in past to-play by enchantment

mais ne juoient mais nient; et ches gius l'empereur

but not played more at-all and these games (of-)the-emperor

esgarderent li Francois a meruelle, quant il les virent.

looked-at the French for wonder when they them saw

91 Or avoit ailleurs en le chité une autre meruelle. Il avoit deus

Now there-had elsewhere in the city an other marvel It had two

ymages jetés de coivre en forme de femme, si bien faites et

images cast of copper in form of woman so well made and

si natureument et si beles que trop; si n'i avoit chelui

so naturally and so fair that exceedingly so not-there had one

n'ait bien vint piés de haut. Si tendoit li uns de ches ymages

not-has well twenty feet of height So stretched the one of these images

se main vers Occident, et avoit letres escrites seur lui qui

its hand toward West and there-had letters written on it which

disoient: «De vers Occident venront chil qui Constantinoble

said From toward West will-come those who Constantinople

conquerront»; et li autres ymages tendoit main en un vilain

will-conquer and the other image stretched hand to a vile

lieu, si disoit: «Ichi,» fait li images, «les boutera on.» Ches

place so said Here says the image them will-thrust one These

deus ymages si seoient devant le cange qui molt soloit estre

two images so sat before the exchange which very was-wont to-be

rikes illuec, et si i soloient estre li rike cangeeur qui

rich there and so there were-wont to-be the rich money-changers who

avoient devant aus les grans mons de besans et les grans mons

had before them the great heaps of bezants and the great heaps

de pierres precieuses, devant chou que le chités fust prise;
of stones precious before this that the city was taken
 mais il n'en i avoit tant adont quant le chités fu prise.

but it not-thereof there had so-many then when the city was taken

Encore i avoit il ailleurs en le chité une greigneur 92

Further there had it elsewhere in the city a greater

mervelle, que il i avoit deus colombes; si avoit bien

marvel for it there had two columns so had well

cascune trois brachies a homme de groisseur, et si avoit

each three arm-spans of man of thickness and so had

bien cascune chinquante toises de haut; et seur cascune

well each fifty fathoms of height and on each

de ches colombes manoit uns hermites lassus, en petis

of these columns dwelt a hermit up-there in small

habitacles qui i estoient; et si i avoit huis par dedens

dwellings which there were and so there had doors by within

les colombes par ou on i montoit. Par dehors ches

the columns by where one there mounted On outside these

columbes si estoient pourtraites et escrites par prophetie

columns so were portrayed and written by prophecy

toutes les aventures et toutes les conquestes qui sont

all the happenings and all the conquests which are

avenues en Coustantinoble, ne qui avenir i devoient. Ne

happened in Constantinople or which to-happen there were-to Nor

ne pooit on savoir l'aventure devant la qu'ele estoit avenue,

not could one know the-happening before there that-it was happened

et quant ele estoit avenue, dont si i alloient muser le

and when it was happened then so there went to-gaze the

gent, si veoient et aperchevoient dont a prisme l'aventure:

people so saw and perceived then at first the-happening

nis cheste conquete que li Francois le conquisent i

even this conquest that the French it conquered there

estoit escrete et pourtraite, et les nes dont on assali
was written and portrayed and the ships from-which one assailed
 par coi le chités fu prise; ne ne le peurent li Griu savoir
by which the city was taken nor not it could the Greeks know
 devant la que che fu avenu. Et quant che fu avenu, si ala
before there that this was happened And when this was happened so went
 on warder et muser en ches colombes, si trova on que les
one to-look and gaze at these columns so found one that the
 letres, qui estoient escrites seur les nes pourtraites, disoient
letters which were written on the ships portrayed said
 que de vers Occident venroient une gent haut tondue a
that from toward West would-come a people high shorn with
 costeles de fer, qui Constantinoble conquerroient. Toutes ches
coats of iron who Constantinople would-conquer All these
 mervelles que je vous ai chi acontées, et encore assés plus
marvels that I to-you have here recounted and yet plenty more
 que nous ne vous poons mie aconter, trouverent li Franchois
that we not to-you can at-all recount found the French
 en Constantinoble, quant il l'eurent conquis; ne je ne quit
in Constantinople when they it-had conquered nor I not think
 mie, par le mien ensient, que nus hons conterres peust
at-all by the my knowledge that any man teller could
 nombrer mie toutes les abeïes de le chité, tant en i
number at-all all the abbeys of the city so-many of-them there
 avoit il, que de moines que de nonnains, estre les autres
had it both of monks and of nuns besides the other
 moustiers de le vile hors; et si nombroit on qu'il avoit
minsters of the town outside and so reckoned one that-it had
 bien largement en le chité .xxx. m. prestres, que moines
well fully in the city thirty thousand priests both monks
 que autres. Des autres Grius, des haus, des bas, de povres,
and others Of-the other Greeks of-the high of-the low of poor

de riches, de le grandeur de le vile, des palais, des autres
of rich of the greatness of the town of-the palaces of-the other
 meruelles qui i sont vous lairons nous ester a dire; car
marvels which there are to-you will-leave we be to tell for
 nus hons terriens, qui tant eust mes en le chité, ne le vous
any man earthly who so-long had dwelt in the city not it to-you
 porroit nombrer ne aconter, que qui vous en conteroit
could number nor recount for whoever to-you thereof would-recount
 le chentisme part de le riqueche, ne de le biauté, ne de le
the hundredth part of the richness nor of the beauty nor of the
 nobleche qui estoit es abeïes et es moustiers et es
nobility which was in-the abbeys and in-the minsters and in-the
 palais et en le vile, sanleroit il que che fust menchoingne,
palaces and in the town would-seem it that this were lie
 ne ne cresriés vous mie. Et entre ches autres en eut
nor not would-believe you at-all And among these others of-them there-had
 un autre des moustiers que on apeloit medame Sainte Marie
one other of-the minsters that one called my-lady Saint Mary
 de Blakerne, ou li sydoines, la ou Nostres Sires fu
of Blachernae where the shroud there where Our Lord was
 envolepés, i estoit, qui cascuns des venres se drechoit
wrapped there was which each of-the Fridays itself raised
 tous drois, si que on i pooit bien veir le figure Nostre
all upright so that one therein could well see the figure (of-)Our
 Seigneur, ne ne seut on onques, ne Griu, ne Francois,
Lord nor not knew one ever neither Greek nor French
 que chis sydoines devint quant le vile fu prise. Et si en
what this shroud became when the town was taken And so of-them
 i avoit une autre des abeïes ou li boins empereres
there had an other of-the abbeys where the good emperor
 Manuaus gesoit, qu'il ne nasqui onques cors seur tere, ne
Manuel lay that-it not was-born ever body on earth nor

sains, ne sainte, qui si rikement ne si noblement geust en
 saint nor she-saint who so richly nor so nobly lay in
 sepulture comme faisoit chis empereres. En chel abeïe si
 tomb as did this emperor In that abbey so
 estoit le tavle de marbre ou Nostre Sires fu estendus,
 was the table of marble where Our Lord was laid-out
 quant il fu despendus de le crois, et si i paroient
 when he was taken-down from the cross and so there appeared
 encore les lermes que Nostre Dame avoit plouré deseure.
 still the tears that Our Lady had wept above

The Election of Baldwin

XXVIII

The marquis wants his own men among the electors, and the doge has the palaces put under common guard, for whoever is chosen. After fifteen days of discord the clergy of the host are made electors, and the doge chooses his ten through sworn men. After a mass of the Holy Spirit the twenty agree on Baldwin of Flanders, and the bishop of Soissons names him. In Saint Sophia he is vested, anointed, and crowned, and a stone Manuel bought for sixty-two thousand marks is hung at his neck.

- 93 Après avint que tout li conte et tout li haut home
 Afterward happened that all the counts and all the big men
 s'asanlerent un jor u palais de Bouke de Lion, que
 themselves-assembled one day in-the palace of Mouth of Lion which
 li marchis tenoit, et disent entr'aus qu'il fesissent
 the marquis held and said among-themselves that-they should-make
 empereur et qu'il esleussent leur dis, et disent au duc
 emperor and that-they should-choose their ten and said to-the doge
 de Venice qu'il esleut les siens dis. Quant li marchis oï
 of Venice that-he should-choose the his ten When the marquis heard

chou, si i vaut metre les siens et chiaux que il cuidoit qui
this so there wished to-put the his and those whom he thought who
 l'esleussent a empereur, et voloit estre empereres entresait.
him-would-choose as emperor and wished to-be emperor outright
 Et li baron ne s'i acorderent mie que li marchis
And the barons not themselves-thereto agreed at-all that the marquis
 i mesist les siens, mais il s'acorderent bien qu'il en
there should-put the his but they themselves-agreed well that-it of-them
 i eust aucuns des siens. Quant li dux de Venice, qui
there should-have some of-the his When the doge of Venice who
 molt ert preusdons et sages, vit chou, si parla oiant tous
very was worthy-man and wise saw this so spoke hearing all
 et dist: «Seigneur, or m'entendés,» fist li dus, «je voel que
and said Lords now me-hear said the doge I wish that
 anchois que on eslise empereur, que li palais soient wardé
before that one choose emperor that the palaces be guarded
 de le kemune warde de l'ost; car se on m'eslit a empereur,
by the common guard of the-host for if one me-chooses as emperor
 que jou i voise tout maintenant sans nul contredit et
that I there go all at-once without any gainsaying and
 que je soie saisis des palais, et ensement, se on eslit le
that I be seized of-the palaces and likewise if one chooses the
 conte de Flandres, qu'il ait les palais sans nul contredit,
count of Flanders that-he have the palaces without any gainsaying
 ou se on eslit le marchis, ou le conte Loeis, ou le conte
or if one chooses the marquis or the count Louis or the count
 de Saint Pol, ou se on eslit un povre chevalier, que chis
of Saint Pol or if one chooses a poor knight that he
 qui ert empereres ait les palais sans nul contredit, ne
who will-be emperor have the palaces without any gainsaying neither
 de marchis, ne du conte de Flandres, ne d'un, ne d'autre.
of marquis nor of-the count of Flanders nor of-one nor of-other

94 Quant li marchis oï chou, si ne peut mie estre encontre,
When the marquis heard this so not could at-all be against
 ains wida le palais que il tenoit; et on ala, si mist on
but quitted the palace that he held and one went so put one
 wardes es palais de le communauté de l'ost qui les palais
guards in-the palaces of the community of the-host who the palaces
 warderoient. Quant li dux de Venice eut si faitement
would-guard When the doge of Venice had in-such wise
 parlé, après si dist as barons qu'il esleussent les leur
spoken afterward so said to-the barons that-they should-choose the their
 dis, que il aroit molt tost eslit les siens dis; et quant
ten for he would-have very soon chosen the his ten and when
 li baron oïrent chou, si i vaut metre cascuns les siens.
the barons heard this so there wished to-put each the his
 Li cuens de Flandres i vaut metre les siens, li cuens
The count of Flanders there wished to-put the his the count
 Loeis, li cuens de Saint Pol et li autre rike homme, et
Louis the count of Saint Pol and the other rich men and
 tant que onques a chele voie ne se peurent acorder
so-far that ever at that time not themselves could agree
 quex il i mesissent ne eslisissent. Ains prisent un autre
which they there should-put nor should-choose But took an other
 jour d'eslirre ches dis, et quant che vint au jour, si ne
day to-choose these ten and when this came to-the day so not
 se peurent acorder quex il esleussent de rekief. Ains
themselves could agree which they should-choose of anew But
 i voloit tous jours metre li marchis chiaux que il cuidoit
there wished all days to-put the marquis those whom he thought
 qui l'esleussent a empereur, et voloit estre empereres aussi
who him-would-choose as emperor and wished to-be emperor as
 comme par forche. Et dura bien cheste descorde quinze jors,
it-were by force And lasted well this discord fifteen days

qu'il ne se pooient concorder; si n'estoit jour qu'il
that-they not themselves could agree so not-was day that-they
 n'assanlaissent pour chestui afaire, et tant que au deesrain
not-assembled for this affair and so-far that at-the last
 se concorderent que li clergiés de l'ost, li vesque, li
themselves agreed that the clergy of the-host the bishops the
 abé, qui i estoient, en fussent esliseur. Adont, quant il
abbots who there were thereof should-be electors Then when they
 se furent acordé, si ala li dux de Venice, si eslut les
themselves were agreed so went the doge of Venice so chose the
 siens dis en tele maniere com je vous dirai. Il apela quatre
his ten in such manner as I to-you will-tell He called four
 des plus preusdomes que il cuidoit en se tere, si leur fist
of-the most worthy-men that he thought in his land so them had
 jurer seur sains que, a leur ensient, eslirroient dis des
swear on relics that to their knowledge they-would-choose ten of-the
 plus preudommes de se tere qui en l'ost estoient, et il si
most worthy-men of his land who in the-host were and they so
 fisent, si que quant il en apeloient un, qu'il l'estouvoit
did so that when they of-them called one that-it him-behooved
 venir avant, ne ne li s'osoit puis parler ne conselier
to-come forward nor not to-him himself-dared thereafter speak nor counsel
 a nului; ains le metoit on tantost en un moustier, et
with anyone but him put one at-once in a minster and
 tout ensement les autres, tant que li dux eut les siens dis;
all likewise the others so-far that the doge had the his ten
 et quant il furent tout en chu moustier, li dis Venicien
and when they were all in this minster the ten Venetians
 et li vesque, si canta on une messe du Saint Esperit,
and the bishops so sang one a mass of-the Holy Spirit

que li Sains Esperis les conseillast, et qu'i les donnast
that the Holy Spirit them should-counsel and that-be them should-grant
 a tel homme assener qui boins i fust et pourfis.

to such man light-upon who good therein were and profitable

95 Quant le messe fu cantee, si sanlerent li esliseeur et

When the mass was sung so assembled the electors and

parlerent en leur conseil, et parlerent d'uns et d'autres,

spoke in their council and spoke of-ones and of-others

et tant que Venicien et vesque et abé et tout li vint

and so-far that Venetians and bishops and abbots and all the twenty

eslisseeur omniement s'acorderent que li cuens de Flandres

electors unanimously themselves-agreed that the count of Flanders

le fust, ne onques n'en i eut nul qui en fust

it should-be nor ever not-thereof there had anyone who thereof was

encontre. Quant il furent si acordé ensanle et leur consaus

against When they were so agreed together and their council

dut departir, si carkierent le parole a dire au vesque de

was-to break-up so charged the word to say to-the bishop of

Sessons. Quant il furent departi, si s'asanlerent tout chil

Soissons When they were parted so themselves-assembled all those

de l'ost por oïr et pour escouter qui on nommeroit a

of the-host for to-hear and for to-listen whom one would-name as

empereur. Quant il furent assanlé, si furent tout coi, si

emperor When they were assembled so were all still so

avoient li pleuseur grant peur et grant doute que on ne

had the most great fear and great dread that one —

nommast le marchis, et chil qui se tenoient devers le

should-name the marquis and those who themselves held toward the

marchis avoient grant doute que on ne nommast autrui que

marquis had great dread that one — should-name another than

le marchis. Si comme il estoient si coi, si se leva li

the marquis So as they were so still so himself rose the

vesques de Sessions em piés, si leur dist: «Seigneur,» fist li
bishop of Soissons on feet so to-them said Lords said the
 vesques, «par le quemun assentement de vous tous, fumes
bishop by the common assent of you all were
 nous envoié a ceste eslection faire. Nous i avons eslut
we sent to this election make We therein have chosen
 tel comme nous saviemes a nostre ensient qui boins i
such as we knew to our knowledge who good therein
 est et en qui empires est bien employés et qui bien est
is and in whom empire is well bestowed and who well is
 poissans de tenir loi et gentix hons et haus hons; nous
able to hold law and noble man and high man we
 le vous nommerons: ch'est Bauduins, li cuens de Flandres.»
him to-you will-name this-is Baldwin the count of Flanders
 Quant le parole fu oïe, si en furent tout li Francois
When the word was heard so thereof were all the French
 molt liés, et teus autres i eut qui en furent molt
very glad and such others there had who thereof were very
 dolent, si comme chil qui devers le marchis se tenoient.
sorrowful so as those who toward the marquis themselves held
 Quant li empereres fu eslus, si le prenent li vesque et
When the emperor was chosen so him take the bishops and
 tout li haut baron et li Francois, qui molt en furent
all the high barons and the French who very thereof were
 lié, si l'en mainent il u palais de Bouke de Lion a
glad so him-thence lead they into-the palace of Mouth of Lion with
 molt grant goie et a molt grant feste. Et quant li haut
very great joy and with very great feast And when the high
 homme furent trestot laiens, si prisent jour de l'empeereur
men were all in-there so took day to the-emperor
 coroner; et quant che vint au jour, si monterent et li
crown and when this came to-the day so mounted both the

vesque et li abé et trestout li haut baron et Venicien
bishops and the abbots and all the high barons both Venetians
 et Francois, si s'en alerent u palais de Bouke
and French so themselves-thence went to-the palace of Moub
 de Lion. Adont si en amenerent l'empereur au moustier
of Lion Then so thence led the-emperor to-the minster
 Sainte Souphie, et quant il furent venu au moustier,
(of-)Saint Sophia and when they were come to-the minster
 si mena on l'empereur en un destour du moustier, en
so led one the-emperor into a recess of-the minster into
 une cambre. La si le desvesti on de ses dras et si le
a chamber There so him unclothed one of his clothes and so him
 descaucha on, si li caucha on unes vermelles cauches
unshod one so on-him put one some vermilion hose
 de samit, se li caucha on uns saullers tous carkiés de
of samite so on-him put one some shoes all laden with
 rikes pierres par deseure, puis se li vesti on une cote
rich stones right above then so on-him put one a coat
 molt rike, qui toute estoit cousue a boutons d'or par
very rich which all was sewn with buttons of-gold in
 devant et par derriere des espaulles dusques au chaint.
front and at back from-the shoulders as-far to-the waist
 Et puis se li vesti on le palle: une maniere d'afulement
And then so on-him put one the pall a manner of-garment
 estoit qui batoit seur le col du pié par devant, et par
was which beat on the neck of-the foot in front and at
 derriere estoit si lons que il s'en chaingnoit, et puis
back was so long that he himself-therewith girded and then
 se li reversoit on arriere par deseure le senestre brach,
so on-him threw-back one back right above the left arm
 ensement comme un fanol, et estoit chus palles molt rikes
just as a maniple and was this pall very rich

et molt nobles et tous carkîés de rikes pierres precieuses.

and very noble and all laden with rich stones precious

Après se li asfula on par deseure un molt rike mantel,

Afterward so on-him donned one right above a very rich mantle

qui tous estoit carkîés de rikes pierres precieuses, et li

which all was laden with rich stones precious and the

aigle qui par dehors erent, estoient fait de pierres precieuses

eagles which on outside were were made of stones precious

et resplendissoient si que che sanloit que li mantiaus fust

and shone so that it seemed that the mantle were

alumés. Quant il fu si faitement vestus, si l'amena on

alight When he was in-such wise clothed so him-led one

devant l'autel; si comme on le mena devant l'autel, se

before the-altar so as one him led before the-altar so

li porta li cuens Loeis sen gonfanon emperial, et li

for-him carried the count Louis his gonfanon imperial and the

cuens de Saint Pol li porta s'espee, et li marchis li

count of Saint Pol for-him carried his-sword and the marquis for-him

porta se corone, et doi vesque soustenoient les deus bras

carried his crown and two bishops supported the two arms

le marchis qui le corone portoit, et doi autre vesque

(of-)the marquis who the crown carried and two other bishops

adestroient l'empeereur; et estoient li baron trestout molt

escorted the-emperor and were the barons all very

rikement vestu, ne si n'i avoit Franchois ne Venicien qui

richly clothed nor so not-there had Frenchman nor Venetian who

n'eust robe ou de samit ou de drap de soie. Et quant li

not-had robe either of samite or of cloth of silk And when the

empereres vint devant l'autel si s'agenoulla, et puis se li

emperor came before the-altar so himself-knelt and then so from-him

osta on le mantel et puis le palle; si remest en pure le

removed one the mantle and then the pall so remained in mere the

cote, se li descousi on le cote des boutons d'or par
coat so from-him unsewed one the coat from-the buttons of-gold in
 devant et par derriere, si qu'il fu tous nus puis le chaint
front and at back so that-he was all naked from the waist
 en amont, et puis si l'enoinst on. Quant il fu enoins,
on up and then so him-anointed one When he was anointed
 se li recousi on le cote as boutons d'or, et puis se
so for-him sewed-back one the coat with-the buttons of-gold and then so
 le revesti on le palle, et puis le mantel li frema on
on-him clothed-again one the pall and then the mantle on-him fastened one
 seur l'espaule; et puis, quant il fu si vestus, et doi vesque
on the-shoulder and then when he was so clothed and two bishops
 tenoient le corone seur l'autel, si alerent tout li vesque,
held the crown on the-altar so went all the bishops
 si prisent le corone tout ensanle, se le beneïrent et si le
so took the crown all together so it blessed and so it
 prinsennierent, se li misent u chief; et puis après se
signed so on-him put on-the bead and then afterward so
 li pendu on au col une molt grant rike pierre en liu de
on-him hung one at-the neck a very great rich stone in place of
 fremal, que li empereres Manuaus acata .lxij.m. mars.
clasp which the emperor Manuel bought sixty-two-thousand marks

The Treasure Shared

XXIX

Baldwin is seated in the chair of Constantine. Only the coarse silver is shared, and Aleaume of Clari wins a knight's share when the count of Saint Pol testifies that he did more in arms than three hundred knights. Baldwin rides out to conquer the land and is received everywhere with keys and processions. The marquis, who has married Kyrzac's widow and been told Salonika is not Baldwin's alone to give, follows him and threatens to leave him if he enters it.

Quant il l'eurent coroné, si l'assissent en une haute caïere, et 97
When they him-had crowned so him-seated in a high chair and
fu illuec tant que le messe fu cantee, et tenoit en se main
was there so-long that the mass was sung and held in his hand
sen septre et en l'autre main une pume d'or et une croisete
his scepter and in the-other hand an apple of-gold and a little-cross
par deseure; et valoient mix li warnement qu'il avoit seur lui
right above and were-worth more the adornments that-be had on him
que li tresors a un rike roi ne faiche. Et quant il eut messe
than the treasure of a rich king — would-do And when he had mass
oïe, si li amena on un blanc cheval ou il monta; si
heard so to-him brought one a white horse on-which he mounted so
l'en ramenerent li baron en sen palais de Bouke de Lion,
him-thence led-back the barons into his palace of Mouth of Lion
si le fist on seir en le caïere Coustentin. Adont, quant il eut
so him had one sit in the chair (of-)Constantine Then when he had
sis en le caïere Coustentin, se le tinrent tout pour empereur,
sat in the chair (of-)Constantine so him held all for emperor
et tout li Griu qui illuec estoient l'aouroient tout comme saint
and all the Greeks who there were him-adored all as holy
empereur; et puis si furent les tavles mises, si mengna li
emperor and then so were the tables set so ate the

empereres et tout li baron avec lui u palais. Quant on eut
emperor and all the barons with him in-the palace When one had
 mengié, si se departirent li baron et alerent s'ent
eaten so themselves departed the barons and went themselves-thence
 tout a leur ostex, et li empereres remest en sen palais.
all to their lodgings and the emperor remained in his palace

- 98 Après avint a un jour que li baron s'asanlerent et
Afterward happened on a day that the barons themselves-assembled and
 disent entr'ax que on partesist l'avoir. Si n'en parti
said among-themselves that one should-divide the-wealth So not-thereof distributed
 on fors le gros argent qui i estoit, les paieles d'argent
one except the coarse silver which there was the basins of-silver
 seulement que les dames de le chité portoient as bains; si
only which the ladies of the city carried to-the baths so
 en dona on a cascun chevalier, a cascun serjant a cheval
thereof gave one to each knight to each sergeant on horse
 et a totes les autres menues gens de l'ost, as femmes et a
and to all the other small people of the-host to-the women and to
 enfans, a cascun. Tant que Aliaumes de Clari, li clers, dont
children to each So-far that Aleaume of Clari the clerk of-whom
 je vous ai parlé par devant, qui si i fu preus de sen
I to-you have spoken just before who so there was valiant of his
 cors et qui tant i fist d'armes, comme nous vous avons
body and who so-much there did of-arms as we to-you have
 dit par devant, dist qu'il voloit partir comme chevaliers; et
said just before said that-he wished to-share as knight and
 aucuns dist que che n'estoit mie drois que il partesist comme
someone said that this not-was at-all right that he should-share as
 chevaliers, et il dist que si estoit, que ausi avoit il eu cheval
knight and he said that so it-was for as had he had horse
 et hauberc comme uns chevaliers, et que autant i avoit il
and hauberk as a knight and that as-much there had he

fait d'armes et plus que teux chevaliers i avoit il; tant que
done of-arms and more than such knight there had it so-far that
 li cuens de Saint Pol fist le jugement que aussi devoit il
the count of Saint Pol made the judgment that as ought be
 partir comme uns chevaliers, que plus i avoit il fait d'armes
share as a knight for more there had be done of-arms
 et de proeches, che li tesmoingna li cuens de Saint Pol,
and of prowess this for-him testified the count of Saint Pol
 que teux trois chens chevaliers en i eut il ne fissent, et
than such three hundred knights of-them there had it — did and
 par tant devoit il bien partir comme uns chevaliers. La si
by that ought he well share as a knight There so
 desraïna li clers que li clerc partiroient tout aussi comme
won the clerk that the clerks would-share all just as
 li chevalier. Adont fu partis tous li gros argens, si comme
the knights Then was shared all the coarse silver so as
 je vous ai dit, et li autres avoirs, li ors, li drap de soie,
I to-you have said and the other wealth the gold the cloths of silk
 dont il avoit tant que ch'estoit une fine merveille, se remest
whereof it had so-much that this-was a pure marvel so remained
 a partir et fu mis en kemune warde de l'ost, en le warde
to share and was put in common guard of the-host in the guard
 a teux gens que on cuidoit qui loialment le wardaissent.
of such people whom one thought who loyally it would-guard
 Après ne demora mie graument quant li empereres manda 99
Afterward not delayed at-all greatly when the emperor summoned
 tous les haus barons et le duc de Venice et le conte Loeis
all the high barons and the doge of Venice and the count Louis
 et le conte de Saint Pol et tous les haus hommes, et dist
and the count of Saint Pol and all the high men and said
 qu'il voloit aler conquerre de le tere, et tant que on atira
that-he wished to-go to-conquer of the land and so-far that one arranged

qui avec l'empereur iroit, et atira on liquel remanrroient
who with the-emperor would-go and arranged one which would-remain
 pour le chité warde. Et atira on que li dux de Venice
for the city guard And arranged one that the doge of Venice
 demora, et li cuens Loeis, et de leur gens avec aus; et
remained and the count Louis and of their people with them and
 si demora li marchis, si espousa le femme Kyrsaac, qui
so remained the marquis so wedded the wife (of-)Kyrzac who
 empereres fu, qui estoit suers le roi de Hongerie. Quant
emperor was who was sister (of-)the king of Hungary When
 li marchis vit que li empereres dut mouvoir pour aler
the marquis saw that the emperor was-to set-out for to-go
 conquerre le terre, si vint, si demanda a l'empereur que il
to-conquer the land so came so asked of the-emperor that he
 li donnast le royaume de Salenike, une tere qui estoit bien
to-him should-give the kingdom of Salonika a land which was well
 quinze journees loins de Coustantinoble, et li empereres
fifteen days far from Constantinople and the emperor
 li respondi qu'ele n'estoit mie siwe a donner, car li baron
to-him answered that-it not-was at-all his to give for the barons
 de l'ost et li Venicien i avoient le greigneur partie;
of the-host and the Venetians therein had the greater part
 mais, tant comme a lui en asferoit, li dounoit il molt
but as-much as to him thereof pertained to-him gave he very
 volentiers et molt ameement, mais le partie as barons de
gladly and very lovingly but the part of-the barons of
 l'ost ne as Veniciens ne li pooit il mie donner. Quant
the-host nor of-the Venetians not to-him could be at-all give When
 li marchis vit qu'il n'en pooit mie avoir, s'en fu tous
the marquis saw that-he not-thereof could at-all have so-thereat was all
 courchiés. Après li empereres s'en ala la ou il eut
angered Afterward the emperor himself-thence went there where he had

pourposé a aler a toute se gent. Si comme il venoit as
resolved to go with all his people So as he came to-the
 castiax et as chités, se li rendoit on sans contredit
castles and to-the cities so to-him rendered one without gainsaying
 et aporloit li on les clez encontre lui, et venoient li
and brought to-him one the keys to-meet him and came the
 prestre et li clerc revestu a pourchession encontre lui et
priests and the clerks vested in procession to-meet him and
 le recevoient, et l'aouroient li Griu tout comme saint
him received and him-adored the Greeks all as holy
 empereur. Et metoit li empereres ses wardes es castiaus
emperor And put the emperor his guards in-the castles
 et es chités partout si comme il venoit; et tant que il
and in-the cities everywhere so as he came and so-far that he
 conquist bien de le tere de si a quinze journées loins de
conquered well of the land as far as fifteen days far from
 Coustantinoble, et tant que il vint a une journee pres de
Constantinople and so-far that he came to a day near of
 Salenike. Entre ches entrefaites que li empereres conquerroit
Salonika Between these doings that the emperor conquered
 si le terre, si estoit li marchis esmus a toute se femme et
so the land so was the marquis set-out with all his wife and
 a tote se gent a venir après l'empereur et si qu'il atainst
with all his people to come after the-emperor and so that-he overtook
 l'ost l'empereur anchois que li empereres venist a Salenike.
the-host (of-)the-emperor before that the emperor came to Salonika
 Et quant il eut l'ost atainte, si s'ala logier bien une liwe
And when he had the-host overtaken so himself-went to-lodge well a league
 en sus, et quant il se fu logiés, si prist messages, si les
away off and when he himself was lodged so took messengers so them
 envia a l'empereur, et se li manda qu'il n'alast mie
sent to the-emperor and so to-him sent-word that-he not-should-go at-all

en se tere de Salenike que on li avoit donnee, car bien
into his land of Salonika which one to-him had given for well
 seust il que s'il i aloit, qu'il n'iroit plus avec lui,
should-know he that if-he there went that-he not-would-go more with him
 ne il plus ne se tenroit a lui, ains s'en retorneroit
nor he more not himself would-hold to him but himself-thence would-return
 arriere en Coustantinoble et feroit le miex qu'il porroit.
back into Constantinople and would-do the best that-he could

Boniface Rebels

XXX

The barons refuse the marquis, who takes one of the emperor's cities by treason and besieges Adrianople, showing its people Kyrac's widow and her children. Baldwin takes Salonika, and Peter of Amiens dies near Philippi. A truce with the marquis is made only with great pains, and the returning knights find the city and its wealth divided without them. When John the Vlach asks Peter of Bracieux why he came so far, Peter answers that Troy was their ancestors'.

100 Quant li baron de le compaingnie l'empereeur oïrent chu
When the barons of the company (of-)the-emperor heard this
 mant que li marchis avoit mandé, si en eurent molt grant
message that the marquis had sent so thereof had very great
 engaingne et molt grant duel; se li remanderent arriere au
indignation and very great grief so to-him sent-word-back back to-the
 marchis que pour lui ne pour sen mant n'i lairoient il
marquis that for him nor for his message not-there would-leave-off they
 mie a aler plus que pour nient, car le tere n'estoit mie siwe.
at-all to go more than for nothing for the land not-was at-all his

Quant li marchis oï chou, si s'en retorna arriere, si 101

When the marquis heard this so himself-thence returned back so
 s'en vint a une chité ou li empereres avoit mis de
himself-thence came to a city where the emperor had put of
 ses gens pour le chité warder; si le prent il par traïson.

his people for the city to-guard so it takes he by treason

Quant il eut chele chité prise, si i mist wardes de se
When he had that city taken so there put guards of his
 gent; et puis quant il eut che fait, si s'en vint a une

people and then when he had this done so himself-thence came to an
 autre chité, Andernople avoit a non, ou li empereres avoit
other city Adrianople had as name where the emperor had

mis de se gent, si l'assist, et fist drechier ses perrieres et
put of his people so it-besieged and had raised his petrarries and
 ses mangouniaus pour assalir a le chité, et chil de le chité
his mangonels for to-assail at the city and those of the city

se contretinrent bien encontre lui. Et quant il vit que
themselves held-out well against him And when he saw that

il ne les porroit prendre par forche, si parla a chiaux qui
he not them could take by force so spoke to those who
 estoient as murs, et si leur dist: «Ba! seigneur, de ne
were on-the walls and so to-them said Bab lords what not
 connessiés vous que che fust chi femme Kyrsaac l'empereur?»

know you that this was here wife (of-)Kyrzac the-emperor

Si amenoit se femme avant, et disoit se femme: «Ba! de
So brought his wife forward and said his wife Bab what
 ne me connessiés vous que je soie empereris et de ne
not me know you that I am empress and what not

connessiés vous mes deux enfans que jou euch de Kyrsaac
know you my two children that I had by Kyrzac

l'empereur?» Si amenoit avant ses enfans, tant que uns sages
the-emperor So brought forward her children so-far that a wise

hons de le chité respondi: «Ouil», fist chis, «nous connaissons

man of the city answered Yes said this-one we know

bien que che fu femme Kyrsaac et que che furent si

well that this was wife (of-)Kyrzac and that these were his

enfant. — Ba!» fist li marchis, «pour coi ne connessiés

children Bab said the marquis for what not know

vous dont l'un des enfans a seigneur? — Je le vous dirai»,

you then the-one of-the children as lord I it to-you will-tell

fist chis, «alés en Constantinoble et faites loi coroner; et

said this-one go into Constantinople and have him crowned and

quant il ara sis en le caiiere Coustentin et nous le

when he will-have sat in the chair (of-)Constantine and we it

sarons, adont si en ferons chou que faire en deverons.»

will-know then so thereof we-will-do this that to-do thereof we-shall-owe

102 Entre ches entrefaites que li marchis ouvra ensi, si ala li

Between these doings that the marquis wrought thus so went the

empereres a Salenike, si l'assist; et quant il l'eut assise, si fu

emperor to Salonika so it-besieged and when he it-had besieged so was

l'os si povre qu'il n'i avoit mie pain a paistre plus de

the-host so poor that-it not-there had at-all bread to feed more than

chent hommes, mais char et vin avoient il assés. Et n'i

hundred men but flesh and wine had they plenty And not-there

sist mie longement li empereres, quant on li rendi le chité;

sat at-all long the emperor when one to-him rendered the city

et quant le chités li fu rendue, si eut puis assés chou que

and when the city to-him was rendered so had then plenty this that

mestier li fu et pain et vin et char. Et puis si i mist li

need to-him was both bread and wine and flesh And then so there put the

empereres ses wardes, et puis n'eut mie conseil d'aler avant; ains

emperor his guards and then not-bad at-all counsel to-go forward but

s'en retorna ariere a revenir s'ent en Coustantinoble.

himself-thence returned back to come-back himself-thence into Constantinople

Adont si avint molt grant damaches et molt grans deus en 103

Then so happened very great harm and very great grief in
 l'ost, que mes sires Pierres d'Amiens, li biaux et li preus,
the-host for my lord Peter of-Amiens the fair and the valiant
 morut au repairier, a une chité, le Blanche l'apeloit on, qui
died at-the returning at a city the White it-called one which
 estoit molt pres de Phelipe, la ou Alixandres fu nes, et si
was very near of Philippi there where Alexander was born and so
 morurent bien chinquante chevaliers en chele voie. Et si comme
died well fifty knights on that way And so as
 li empereres s'en revenoit, si oï les nouveles que li
the emperor himself-thence came-back so heard the news that the
 marchis avoit prise une de ses chités par traïson et qu'il i
marquis had taken one of his cities by treason and that-he there
 avoit mises ses wardes de se gent et avoit assise Andernople.
had put his guards of his people and had besieged Adrianople

Quant li empereres et li baron de l'ost oïrent chou, si 104

When the emperor and the barons of the-host heard this so
 furent si corchié et si tormenté que trop, et manechierent
were so angered and so tormented that exceedingly and threatened
 le marchis et se gent que s'il les atainnoient, qu'il les
the marquis and his people that if-they them overtook that-they them
 decauperoient tous, ne ne le lairoient pour homme vivant.
would-cut-to-pieces all nor not it would-leave-off for man living
 Quant li marchis seut que li empereres revenoit, si eut
When the marquis knew that the emperor was-coming-back so had
 molt grant peur, si comme chis qui molt avoit meffait, si que
very great fear so as he who much had misdome so that
 a paines se seut il consellier, et tant que il manda en
with pains himself knew-how-to he counsel and so-far that he sent-word into
 Coustantinoble au duc de Venice et au conte Loeis et as
Constantinople to-the doge of Venice and to-the count Louis and to-the

autres barons qui i estoient remés qu'il se meteroit en leur
other barons who there were remained that-he himself would-put in their
 eswart et qu'il amenderoit par aus chou qu'il avoit mesfait;
judgment and that-he would-amend by them this that-he had misdane
 tant que li dux et li cuens et li autre baron, quant il
so-far that the doge and the count and the other barons when they
 oïrent que li marchis voloit amender par aus chou qu'il avoit
heard that the marquis wished to-amend by them this that-he had
 mesfait et entrepris, si envoierent quatre messages a l'empereur,
misdane and undertaken so sent four messengers to the-emperor
 et manderent lui k'ensi faitement leur avoit li marchis
and sent-word to-him that-tbus wise to-them had the marquis
 mandé, et que il ne li fesist mal, ne a lui ne a se gent.
sent-word and that he not to-him should-do harm neither to him nor to his people
 Quant li baron et li chevalier de l'ost oïrent chou, si
When the barons and the knights of the-host heard this so
 respondirent que chou ne valoit riens qu'il ne hounesissent
answered that this not availed anything that-they — should-shame
 le marchis et se gent et qu'il ne les decaupaissent tous,
the marquis and his people and that-they — them should-cut-to-pieces all
 si les pooient ataindre, et tant que a grans paines les
if them they-could overtake and so-far that with great pains them
 en apaisa on, mais que toutes heures donnerent il triwes
thereof appeased one but that all the-same gave they truce
 le marchis. Après si demanderent li baron as messages
(to-)the marquis Afterward so asked the barons of-the messengers
 des nouvelles de Coustantinoble et que on i faisoit; et
of-the news of Constantinople and what one there did and
 li message respondirent que on i faisoit bien, et que il
the messengers answered that one there did well and that they
 avoient l'avoir parti, qui estoit demorés, et le vile. «Qui?»
had the-wealth divided which was remained and the town What

fisent li chevalier et li joule bachelier de l'ost, «nostre avoir
said the knights and the young bachelors of the-host our wealth
 avés vous parti, dont nous avons souffert les grans paines et
have you divided whereof we have suffered the great pains and
 les grans travaus, les fains et les sois et les frois et les
the great travails the hungers and the thirsts and the colds and the
 caus, si l'avés parti sans nous? Tenés!» faisoient il as
beats so it-you-have divided without us Hold said they to-the
 messages, «veschi men wage», faisoit li uns, «que je vous
messengers behold-here my gage said the one that I to-you
 mousterrai que vous estes tout traïteur!» Resaloit uns autres
will-prove that you are all traitors Leapt-in-turn an other
 avant, si disoit aussi, et li autres aussi, si que il furent si
forward so said also and the other also so that they were so
 iré durement qu'il vaurrent les messages tous decauper,
wrathful greatly that-they wished the messengers all to-cut-to-pieces
 et si que pour un peu qu'il ne les ochisent; et tant que
and so that for a little that-they — them killed and so-far that
 li empereres et li haut homme de l'ost i misent conseil
the emperor and the high men of the-host therein put counsel
 et plus bele concorde que il peurent, et qu'il s'en
and more fair concord that they could and that-they themselves-thence
 vinrent ariere ensanle en Coustantinoble. Et quant il furent
came back together into Constantinople And when they were
 revenu, si n'en i eut onques nul qui seust rassener
returned so not-thereof there had ever anyone who knew-how-to find-the-way
 a sen ostel, car li ostel dont il estoient parti ne leur
to his lodging for the lodgings whence they were departed not to-them
 estoient mie demoré, pour chou que on avoit le chité
were at-all remained for this that one had the city
 partie, et leur maisnies avoient pris leur ostex ailleurs en
divided and their households had taken their lodgings elsewhere in

le chité, si que il leur couvenoit querre leur ostex en sus
the city so that it them behooved to-seek their lodgings away off
 de chiaux dont il estoient parti bien une liwe ou deus.

from those whence they were departed well a league or two

106 Or aviemes evlié a conter une aventure qu'il avint

Now we-had forgotten to recount an adventure that-it happened

a monseigneur Pierrom de Braiechoel. Il avint que li

to my-lord Peter of Bracieux It happened that the

empereres Henris estoit en ost, et Jehans li Blaks et

emperor Henry was in host and John the Vlach and

li Commain si estoient corut en le tere l'empereur, et

the Cumans so were run into the land (of-)the-emperor and

s'estoient logié bien deus liwes ou mains loins de l'ost

themselves-were lodged well two leagues or less far from the-host

l'empereur, et avoient molt oï parler de monseigneur

(of-)the-emperor and had much heard speak of my-lord

Pierron de Braiechoel et de se boine chevalerie, et tant

Peter of Bracieux and of his good knighthood and so-far

qu'il manderent un jour monseigneur Pierron de Braiechoel

that-they sent-word one day (to-)my-lord Peter of Bracieux

par messages qu'il parleroient molt volentiers a lui un jor

by messengers that-they would-speak very gladly to him one day

et par conduit; et mesires Pierres respondi que, s'il avoit

and under safe-conduct and my-lord Peter answered that if-be had

sauf conduit, qu'il i iroit volentiers parler a aus, et

safe conduct that-be there would-go gladly to-speak to them and

tant que li Blak et li Commain envoierent boins ostages

so-far that the Vlachs and the Cumans sent good hostages

a l'ost l'empereur tant que mesires Pierres fust revenus.

to the-host (of-)the-emperor until that my-lord Peter should-be returned

Adont si ala mesires Pierres, lui quart de chevaliers, si

Then so went my-lord Peter him fourth of knights so

monta seur un grant cheval; si comme il vint pres de l'ost
mounted on a great horse so as he came near of the-host
 as Blaks et Jehans li Blaks seut qu'il venoit, si ala
of-the Vlachs and John the Vlach knew that-he was-coming so went
 encontre lui et des haus hommes de Blakie avec; si
to-meet him and some-of-the high men of Wallachia with so
 le saluerent et bienvignierent et si l'eswarderent a molt
him greeted and welcomed and so him-gazed-at with very
 grant paine, car il estoit molt grans, et parlerent a lui
great pains for he was very great and spoke to him
 d'une coses et d'autres, et tant qu'il li disent: «Sire,
of-some things and of-others and so-far that-they to-him said Lord
 nous nous merveillons molt de vo boine chevalerie, et si
we ourselves marvel much at your good knighthood and so
 nous merveillons mout que vous estes quis en chest païs,
ourselves marvel much what you are seeking in this country
 qui de si loingtaines teres estes, qui chi estes venu pour
who from so distant lands are who here are come for
 conquerre tere. De n'avés vous», fisent il, «teres en vos
to-conquer land What not-have you said they lands in your
 païs dont vous vous puissiés warir?» Et mesires Pierres
countries whereby you yourselves may keep And my-lord Peter
 respondi: «Ba!» fist il, «de n'avés vous oï comment Troies
answered Bah said he what not-have you heard how Troy
 le grant fu destruite ne par quel tor? — Ba ouil!» fisent
the great was destroyed or by what trick Bah yes said
 li Blak et li Commain, «nous l'avons bien oï dire, mout
the Vlachs and the Cumans we it-have well heard tell much
 a que che ne fu. — Ba!» fist mesires Pierres, «Troies fu
has-been that this not was Bah said my-lord Peter Troy was
 a nos anchiseurs, et chil qui en escaperent si s'en
of our ancestors and those who thence escaped so themselves-thence

vinrent manoir la dont nous sommes venu; et pour che
 came to-dwell there whence we are come and for this
 que fu a nos anchisieurs, sommes nous chi venu conquerre
 that it-was of our ancestors are we here come to-conquer
 tere.» A tant si prist congié, si s'en revint ariere.
 land With that so took leave so himself-thence came-back back

The Fiefs, and the Death of Murzuphlus

XXXI

The emperor takes a quarter of the city, the Venetians and the pilgrims share the rest, and the land is given out in fiefs, two hundred to some and six or seven to the least. Thierry, brother of the count of Loos, captures Murzuphlus in a pass as he rides in state. On the doge's advice, high justice for a high man, Murzuphlus is thrown from one of the two columns on which the city's fortunes were carved. The marquis makes peace with the emperor and has Salonika.

107 Quant li empereres fu revenus et li baron qui avec lui
 When the emperor was returned and the barons who with him
 alerent et il eurent conquis grant partie de le tere et bien
 went and they had conquered great part of the land and well
 soisante chités, estre les castiaus et les viles hors, et le
 sixty cities besides the castles and the towns outside and the
 chités de Coustantinoble fu partie, si que li empereres en
 city of Constantinople was divided so that the emperor thereof
 eut le quarte partie franke, et les autres trois parties furent
 had the fourth part free and the other three parts were
 departies si que li Venicien en eurent le motié des trois
 divided so that the Venetians thereof had the half of-the three
 parties et li pelerin l'autre. Si devisa on après a partir
 parts and the pilgrims the-other So arranged one afterward to divide

le tere qui estoit conquise; si departi on avant as contes
the land which was conquered so distributed one first to-the counts
 et puis après as autres haus hommes, et eswardoit on
and then afterward to-the other high men and considered one
 selonc chou qu'il estoit plus rikes hons et plus haus hons
according-to this that-be was more rich man and more high man
 et qu'il avoit eu plus de gent de se maisnie en l'ost, se
and that-be had had more of people of his household in the-host so
 li donnoit on plus tere. Si i eut tel a cui on donna
to-him gave one more land So there had such to whom one gave
 deus chens fiés a chevalier, a tel i eut chent, a tel i
two hundred fiefs of knight to such there had hundred to such there
 eut soisante et dis, a tel i eut soisante, a tel i eut
had sixty and ten to such there had sixty to such there had
 quarante, a tel i eut vint, a tel i eut dis, et chil qui le
forty to such there had twenty to such there had ten and those who the
 mains en avoient si en avoient set ou sis, et valoit li
least thereof had so thereof had seven or six and was-worth the
 fiés trois chens livrees d'angevins; et disoit on a cascun
fief three hundred pounds'-worth of-Angevins and said one to each
 des haus homes: «Vous arés tant de fiés, et vous tant,
of-the high men You will-have so-many of fiefs and you so-many
 et vous tant, s'en fieverés vos hommes et chiaus
and you so-many so-thereof you-will-enfeoff your men and those
 qui de vous vaurront tenir, et si arés chele chité, et
who of you will-wish to-hold and so you-will-have that city and
 vous chelu, et vous chel autre», et les seigneries qui i
you that-one and you that other and the lordships which thereto
 apendoient. Quant on eut si faitement donné a cascun se
pertained When one had in-such wise given to each his

partie, si aloient li conte et li haut homme veir leur teres
part so went the counts and the high men to-see their lands
 et leur chités et y metoient leur ballius et leur wardes.

and their cities and there put their bailiffs and their guards

108 Tant qu'il avint un jour que mesires Tierris, li freres

So-far that-it happened one day that my-lord Thierry the brother

le conte de Los, aloit veir se tere; si comme il en

(of-)the count of Loos went to-see his land so as he thence

aloit, si encontra par aventure un jor Morchoffe le traïteur,

went so met by chance one day Murzuphlus the traitor

a un destroit, qui s'en aloit ne sai ou. Si avoit

at a pass who himself-thence went not I-know where So he-had

en se compaignie dames et demiseles et assés autre gent,

in his company ladies and damsels and plenty other people

et chevauchoit cointement et noblement comme empereres

and rode elegantly and nobly as emperor

a tout tant de gent comme il pooit. Et mesires Tierris

with all as-much of people as he could And my-lord Thierry

ne fist mais el, se li keurt il sus et fist tant, et

not did more else so on-him runs he upon and did so-much both

il et se gent, qu'il le prist par forche; et quant il l'eut

he and his people that-he him took by force and when he him-had

pris, si l'en amena en Coustantinoble, si le rendi a

taken so him-thence led into Constantinople so him rendered to

l'emperereur Bauduin. Quant li empereres le vit, si le fist

the-emperor Baldwin When the emperor him saw so him had

mettre en prison et l'i fist bien warder.

put in prison and him-there had well guarded

109 Quant Morchoffes fu en prison, si manda li empereres

When Murzuphlus was in prison so summoned the emperor

Bauduins un jour tous ses barons et tous les plus haus qui

Baldwin one day all his barons and all the most high who

estoient en le tere de Coustantinoble qu'il venissent u
were in the land of Constantinople that-they should-come to-the
 palais, le duc de Venice, le conte Loeis, le conte de Saint Pol
palace the doge of Venice the count Louis the count of Saint Pol
 et tous les autres, et il i vinrent. Et quant il furent
and all the others and they there came And when they were
 venu, si leur dist si faitement li empereres Bauduins qu'il
come so to-them said in-such wise the emperor Baldwin that-he
 avoit Morchofle en prison, et leur demanda qu'il l'en
had Murzupblus in prison and of-them asked what-they him-thereof
 looient qu'il en fesist, tant que li un disent que on le
advised that-he thereof should-do so-far that the ones said that one him
 pendist, et li autre disent que on le trainast, tant que li
should-hang and the others said that one him should-drag so-far that the
 dux de Venice dist que trop estoit haus hons pour pendre:
doge of Venice said that too was high man for to-hang
 «Mais de haut home», fist li dux, «haute justiche je vous
But of high man said the doge high justice I to-you
 dirai», fist li dux, «que on en fache: il a en chele vile
will-tell said the doge what one thereof should-do it has in that town
 deus hautes colombes, n'i a chelui qui n'ait tost soisante
two high columns not-there has one which not-has fully sixty
 toises ou chinquante de haut; si le fache on monter en
fathoms or fifty of height so him should-have one mount on
 som l'une, et puis si le faiche on tresbuskier jus a tere.»
top-of the-one and then so him should-have one tumble down to earth
 Or estoit cho de ches deus colombes ou sus li hermite
Now was this of these two columns where up-there the hermits
 manoient, et la ou les aventures de Coustantinoble estoient
dwelt and there where the happenings of Constantinople were
 escrites, si com je vous ai dit par devant. A chou que li
written so as I to-you have said just before To this that the

dux dist s'acorderent li baron. Si prent on Morchofle, si le
doge said themselves-agreed the barons So takes one Murzupblus so him
 mainne on a une de ches coulombes, si le fait on monter
leads one to one of these columns so him has one mount
 en son par les degrés qui dedens estoient. Quant Morchoffles
on top by the steps which within were When Murzupblus
 fu lassus, si le bouta on jus a tere, si que il fu tous
was up-there so him thrust one down to earth so that he was all
 esmiés. Tele venjanche prist on de Morchofle le traïteur.
shattered Such vengeance took one on Murzupblus the traitor

110 Après chou que les teres furent si departies comme je vous ai
After this that the lands were so divided as I to-you have
 dit, si avint que le pais fu faite du marchis et de l'empereur,
said so happened that the peace was made of-the marquis and of the-emperor
 si que li empereres en fu blasmés, pour chou que n'i
so that the emperor thereof was blamed for this that not-thereto
 apela mie tous les haus barons. Toutes eures si demanda li
be-called at-all all the high barons All the-same so asked the
 marchis le roiaime de Salenike, et toutes heures l'eut il et li
marquis the kingdom of Salonika and all the-same it-had he and to-him
 donna li empereres. Et quant li roiaimes li fu otriés, si ala
gave the emperor And when the kingdom to-him was granted so went
 li marchis a toute se femme et a toute se gent, et quant
the marquis with all his wife and with all his people and when
 il vint la, si en prist les warnestures, s'en fu sires et rois.
he came there so thereof took the garrisons so-thereof was lord and king

Adrianople

XXXII

Henry asks for Adramyttium, the counts and Peter of Bracieux for other kingdoms, and the Venetians take Crete, Corfu, and Modon. The count of Saint Pol dies. Baldwin besieges rebel Adrianople, but the Cumans in their pelisses, whom the French despise, rout the host. The emperor vanishes, three hundred knights are lost, and the doge flees: God's vengeance, Robert says, for their pride, their bad faith to the poor, and their sins in the city. The barons send for Henry to be emperor.

Aprés mesires Henris, li freres l'empereur, demanda le
Afterward my-lord Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor asked the
roiaume l'Andremite, qui estoit outre le brach Saint Jorge,
kingdom (of-)Adramyttium which was beyond the arm (of-)Saint George
s'il le pooit conquerre, et on li donna. Adonques i ala
if-he it could conquer and one to-him gave Then there went
mesires Henris a toute se gent, si conquist grant partie de
my-lord Henry with all his people so conquered great part of
le tere. Aprés li cuens Loeis demanda un autre roiaume,
the land Afterward the count Louis asked an other kingdom
et on li donna; et li cuens de Saint Pol redemanda un
and one to-him gave and the count of Saint Pol asked-in-turn an
autre roiaume, et on li donna; après mesires Pierres de
other kingdom and one to-him gave afterward my-lord Peter of
Braiechoel un autre roiaume qui estoit en tere de Sarrasins vers
Bracieux an other kingdom which was in land of Saracens toward
le Coine, s'il le pooit conquerre, et on li otria, et mesires
the Iconium if-he it could conquer and one to-him granted and my-lord
Pierres i ala a toute se gent, si conquist chu roiaume
Peter there went with all his people so conquered this kingdom
molt bien et s'en fu sires. Si faitement demanderent li
very well and so-thereof was lord In-such wise asked the

111

rike homme les roiaumes qui n'estoient mie encore conquis;
rich men the kingdoms which not-were at-all yet conquered
 et li dux de Venice et li Venicien eurent l'isle de Crete et
and the doge of Venice and the Venetians had the-isle of Crete and
 l'isle de Corfaut et l'isle de Mosson, et encore autres assés
the-isle of Corfu and the-isle of Modon and yet others plenty
 que il ja ameerent. Après si avint molt grans damaches
that they already desired Afterward so happened very great harm
 en l'ost que li cuens de Saint Pol morut ne demora waires.
in the-host for the count of Saint Pol died not delayed much

- 112 Puis si avint après que une chités que li empereres
Then so happened afterward that a city which the emperor
 avoit conquise revela encontre lui, Andernople avoit a non
had conquered rebelled against him Adrianople had as name
 chele chités. Quant li empereres le seut, si manda le duc
that city When the emperor it knew so summoned the doge
 de Venice, le conte Loeis et les autres barons; si leur
of Venice the count Louis and the other barons so to-them
 dist qu'il voloit aler aseir Andernople qui estoit revelee
said that-he wished to-go to-besiege Adrianople which was rebelled
 encontre lui, et qu'il li aidassent a conquerre chele chité,
against him and that-they him should-help to conquer that city
 et li baron respondirent que sil feroient il volentiers, et
and the barons answered that so-it would-do they gladly and
 tant que li empereres s'apareilla et li baron d'aler a chele
so-far that the emperor himself-prepared and the barons to-go to that
 chité. Quant il vinrent a chele chité, si l'assissent; si comme
city When they came to that city so it-besieged so as
 il seoient esluec, este me vous un jour ou Jehans li
they sat there behold (to-)me you one day when John the
 Blaks, et il et li Commain, a tout molt grant gent,
Vlach both he and the Cumans with all very great people

venoient le tere de Coustantinoble, si comme il avoient
came(-through) the land of Constantinople so as they had
 autre fois fait; si trouverent l'empereur a toute s'ost seant
other time done so found the-emperor with all his-host sitting
 a Andernople. Quant chil de l'ost virrent ches Commains
at Adrianople When those of the-host saw these Cumans
 a ches plichons vestus, si ne les douterent ne ne prisierent
in these pelisses clad so not them feared nor not prized
 nient plus que un trope d'enfans; et chil Commain et
at-all more than a troop of-children and those Cumans and
 chele gent venoient grandesme aleure, si keurent il sus
that people came very-great pace so run they upon
 as Franchois, si en ochisent mout, si les desconfissent
at-the French so of-them killed many so them rout
 il tous en chele bataille. Si fu perdus li empereres, que
they all in that battle So was lost the emperor so-that
 on ne seut onques que il devint, et li cuens Loëis et
one not knew ever what he became and the count Louis and
 molt d'autres haus hommes, et tant d'autre gent que
many of-other high men and so-many of-other people that
 nous n'en savons le nombre, mais que bien i perdi
we not-thereof know the number but that well there lost
 on trois chens chevaliers; et qui escaper peut, si s'en
one three hundred knights and who escape could so himself-thence
 vint fuient en Coustantinoble, si que li dux de Venice
came fleeing into Constantinople so that the doge of Venice
 s'en vint fuient et assés gens avec lui, et laissierent
himself-thence came fleeing and plenty people with him and left
 leur tentes et leur harnas, tout si comme il seioient a
their tents and their harness all so as they sat at
 chele chité, que onques n'oserent vertir chele part, si i fu
that city for ever not-dared turn that way so there was

le desconfiture grans. Ensi faitement se venja Damedieus

the defeat great Thus wise himself avenged Lord-God

d'aus pour leur orguel et pour le male foi qu'il avoient

of-them for their pride and for the bad faith that-they had

portee a le povre gent de l'ost, et les oribles pekiés qu'il

borne to the poor people of the-host and the horrible sins that-they

avoient fais en le chité, après chou qu'i l'eurent prise.

had done in the city after this that-they it-had taken

113 Quant li empereres fu perdus par si faite mesaventure, si

When the emperor was lost by so made misbap so

en furent li baron qui remessent molt courchiet. Après

thereof were the barons who remained very angered Afterward

si sanlerent un jour pour faire empereeur. Si manda

so they-assembled one day for to-make emperor So summoned

on monseigneur Henri, le frere l'empereeur Bauduin qui

one my-lord Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin who

fu, pour faire ent empereeur, qui estoit en se tere qu'il

was for to-make of-him emperor who was in his land that-be

avoit conquire outre le bras Saint Jorge.

had conquered beyond the arm (of-)Saint George

The Emperor Henry

XXXIII

The Venetians accept Henry as emperor only in exchange for the Greeks' icon of Our Lady. Henry marries the marquis's daughter, who soon dies. The marquis is killed by John the Vlach, who besieges Salonika until Saint Demetrius strikes him through with a lance in his tent. Henry marries the daughter of Burun, John's successor and dies at Salonika after crowning the marquis's son. Robert of Clari, who was there, vouches for the truth.

Quant li dux de Venice et li Venicien virent que on
When the doge of Venice and the Venetians saw that one
veut faire empereur de monseigneur Henri, si en furent
wishes to-make emperor of my-lord Henry so thereof were
encontre, ne si ne le vaurrent mie sousfrir, s'il n'eussent un
against nor so not it wished at-all to-suffer if-they not-had an
ymage de Nostre Dame qui estoit painte en une tavle. Si
image of Our Lady which was painted on a panel So
estoit chis ymages si rikes que molt, et estoit tous carkies
was this image so rich that much and was all laden
de rikes pierres precieuses. Si disoient li Griu que chou
with rich stones precious So said the Greeks that this
estoit li premiers ymages de Nostre Dame qui onques fust
was the first image of Our Lady which ever was
fais ne pourrais. En chel ymage si avoient li Griu si grant
made nor portrayed In that image so had the Greeks so great
fianche que il l'aouroient seur toute rien, et si le portoient
trust that they it-adored above all thing and so it carried
cascun demars a pourchession; si l'aouroient li Griu et
each Tuesday in procession so it-adored the Greeks and
donnoient lui molt grans dons. Ore ne voloient nient li
gave it very great gifts Now not wished at-all the

114

Venicien souffrir que mesires Henris fust empereres, s'il
Venetians to-suffer that my-lord Henry should-be emperor if-they
 n'eussent chel ymage, tant c'on leur donna chel ymage.
not-had that image so-far that-one to-them gave that image
 Puis si corona on monseigneur Henri a empereur.

Then so crowned one my-lord Henry as emperor

- 115 Quant mesires Henri fu empereres, si parlerent tant ensanle
When my-lord Henry was emperor so they-spoke so-long together
 après, entre lui et le marchis qui estoit rois de Salenike, que
afterward between him and the marquis who was king of Salonika that
 li marchis li donna se fille et que li empereres l'espousa;
the marquis to-him gave his daughter and that the emperor her-wedded
 et puis si ne veski mie longement l'empereur, ains morut.
and then so not lived at-all long the-emperor but died

- 116 Ne demoura mie lonc tans après que Jehans li Blaks et li
Not delayed at-all long time after that John the Vlach and the
 Commain coururent en le tere le marchis de Salenike. Et
Cumans ran into the land (of-)the marquis of Salonika And
 li marchis estoit en se tere, et tant qu'il se combati a
the marquis was in his land and so-far that-he himself fought with
 ches Blaks et a ches Commain et que il fu ochis en cele
these Vlachs and with these Cumans and that he was killed in that
 bataille et se gent toute desconfite. Si va Jehans li Blaks et
battle and his people all routed So goes John the Vlach and
 chil Commain, si assient il Salenike, si font drechier leur
those Cumans so besiege they Salonika so have raised their
 engiens pour assalir a le chité; et le femme le marchis
engines for to-assail at the city and the wife (of-)the marquis
 estoit remese en le chité, et chevaliers et autres gens avec
was remained in the city and knights and other people with
 lui qui le vile desfendoient. Or gesoit li cors monseigneur
her who the town defended Now lay the body (of-)my-lord

saint Dimitre en le chité, qui ne vaut onques sousfrir que
saint Demetrius in the city who not wished ever to-suffer that
 se chités fust prise par forche; si decouroit si grans plentés
his city should-be taken by force so flowed so great plenty
 d'oille de chu cors saint que ch'estoit une fine merveille. Si
of-oil from this body holy that this-was a pure marvel So
 avint, si comme Jehans li Blaks se gesoit une matinee en
happened so as John the Vlach himself lay one morning in
 se tente, que mesires sains Dimitres vint, si le feri d'une
his tent that my-lord saint Demetrius came so him struck with-a
 lanche par mi le cors, si l'ochist. Quant se gent et
lance through the-midst-of the body so him-killed When his people and
 li Commain seurent qu'il fu mors, si se deslogierent,
the Cumans knew that-be was dead so themselves decamped
 si s'en ralerent en le tere. Et puis après si escaï
so themselves-thence went-back into the land And then afterward so fell
 li roiaumes de Blakie a un neveu Jehan, Burons avoit a
the kingdom of Wallachia to a nephew (of-)John Burun had as
 non. Chus Burus si fu après rois de Blakie, et avoit
name This Burun so was afterward king of Wallachia and had
 une bele fille. Après avint que li empereres Henris, qui
a fair daughter Afterward happened that the emperor Henry who
 molt fu boins empereres, se conseilla a ses barons que
very was good emperor himself counseled with his barons what
 il porroit faire de ches Blaks et de ches Commains, qui
he could do of these Vlachs and of these Cumans who
 si faitement werioient l'empire de Coustantinoble et qui
in-such wise warred-on the-empire of Constantinople and who
 l'empereur Bauduin sen frere li avoient mort; tant que
the-emperor Baldwin his brother for-him had killed so-far that
 li baron li loerent qu'il envoiait a chelui Burus, qui estoit
the barons him advised that-be should-send to that Burun who was

rois de Blakie, et que il li mandast qu'il li donnast
king of Wallachia and that he to-him should-send-word that-he to-him should-give
 sa fille a femme. Et li empereres respondi ke femme de
his daughter to wife And the emperor answered that wife of
 si bas parage ne prendroit il ja. Et li baron disent: «Sire,
so low lineage not would-take he ever And the barons said Lord
 si ferés! nous vous loons bien que vous vous acordés a
so you-will-do we you advise well that you yourself accord with
 aus, car che sont le plus fort gent et le plus doutee de
them for these are the most strong people and the most feared of
 l'empire ne de le tere.» Et tant parlerent li baron que li
the-empire nor of the land And so-long spoke the barons that the
 empereres i envoa deus chevaliers haus hommes, et si
emperor there sent two knights high men and so
 les fist atourner molt belement, et s'en alerent li
them had equipped very handsomely and themselves-thence went the
 message molt doutanment en chele sauvage tere, et quant
messengers very fearfully into that savage land and when
 il vinrent la, si les vaut on destruire. Et toutes eures
they came there so them wished one to-destroy And all the-same
 pallerent tant li message a chelui Burus que il leur
spoke so-long the messengers to that Burun that he to-them
 respondi que il enverroient volentiers se fille a l'empereur.
answered that he would-send gladly his daughter to the-emperor

117 Adonques si fist atoner Burus li rois se fille molt
Then so had equipped Burun the king his daughter very
 rikement et molt noblement, et assés gent avec lui; si
richly and very nobly and plenty people with her so
 l'envoia a l'empereur, et li fist baillier soisante sommiers
her-sent to the-emperor and to-her had delivered sixty packhorses
 tous carkies d'avoir et d'or et d'argent et de dras de
all laden with-wealth and of-gold and of-silver and of cloths of

soie et de rikes joiaus; ne n'i avoit sommier qui ne fust
silk and of rich jewels nor not-there had packhorse which not were
 couvers d'un vermel samit, qui si estoit lons qu'il trainoit
covered with-a vermilion samite which so was long that-it trailed
 bien set piés ou uit a cascun par derriere, ne ja tant
well seven feet or eight on each at back nor ever so-much
 n'alaissent par boe ne par laides voies que ja en fust
not-they-should-go through mud nor through foul ways that ever thereof was
 nus des samis escorchîés, tout par cointise et par nobleche.
any of-the samites torn all for elegance and for nobility

Quant li empereres seut que le demisele venoit, si ala encontre 118

When the emperor knew that the damsel was-coming so went to-meet
 lui, et li baron avec lui, et si en fist molt grant feste
her and the barons with him and so thereof made very great feast
 de lui et de se gent, et puis après si l'espousa l'empereres.
of her and of her people and then afterward so her-wedded the-emperor

Ne demoura mie grant tans après que on manda l'empereur 119

Not delayed at-all great time after that one summoned the-emperor
 a Salenike pour courouner le fil le marchis a roi, et
to Salonika for to-crown the son (of-)the marquis as king and
 li empereres i ala. Et quant il l'eut couronné, le fil
the emperor there went And when he him-had crowned the son
 le marchis, si amaladi la et si i morut, dont che
(of-)the marquis so fell-sick there and so there died whereof this
 fu molt grans damages et mout grans pitiés.

was very great harm and very great pity

Ore avés oï le verité, confaitement Coustantinoble fu 120

Now you-have heard the truth how Constantinople was
 conquise, et confaitement li cuens de Flandres Bauduins en
conquered and how the count of Flanders Baldwin thereof
 fu empereres, et mesires Henris ses freres après, que chis qui
was emperor and my-lord Henry his brother after as he who

i fu et qui le vit et qui l'oï le tesmongne, Robers de Clari,
there was and who it saw and who it-heard it testifies Robert of Clari
 li chevaliers, et a fait metre en escrit le verité, si comme
the knight and has had put in writing the truth so as
 ele fu conquise; et ja soit chou que il ne l'ait si belement
it was conquered and although be this that he not it-has so handsomely
 contee le conquete, comme maint boin diteur l'eussent contee,
told the conquest as many-a good writer it-would-have told
 si en a il toutes eures le droite verité contee, et assés de
so thereof has he all the-same the right truth told and plenty of
 verités en a teutes qu'il ne peut mie toutes ramembrer.
truths thereof has left-untold for-he not could at-all all remember
 Explicit.

Here-ends
